

# CMS

## CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

Waikato Conservancy 2014–2024, Volume 1  
DRAFT December 2012



Department of  
Conservation  
*Te Papa Atawhai*



*Cover image:* Rider on the Timber Trail, Pureora Forest Park  
*Photo:* DOC

© Copyright December 2012, New Zealand Department of Conservation

ISSN 1171-5995

In the interest of forest conservation, we support paperless electronic publishing.

# Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
Purpose of conservation management strategies	3
CMS structure	4
CMS term	5
Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools, and other agencies' planning processes	5
Legislative tools	6
International obligations	7
<b>Part One</b>	<b>8</b>
1.1 Waikato Conservancy	8
1.2 Vision for Waikato—2060	8
1.3 Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato Conservancy	10
1.4 Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities	17
1.5 Waikato Conservancy by 2024	22
1.6 The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato	35
1.7 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park	39
<b>Part Two—Places</b>	<b>42</b>
2.1 Hauraki Islands Place	43
2.2 Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place	51
2.3 Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place	66
2.4 Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place	78
2.5 Freshwater Wetlands Place	84
2.6 Karioi to Whareorino Place	95
2.7 Waitomo Place	107
2.8 Pureora Place	114
<b>Part Three—Specific policy requirements for Waikato Conservancy</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>Part Four—Implementation, monitoring, reporting and review</b>	<b>148</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>149</b>

## Appendices

<b>Appendix 1:</b>	168
Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents	
<b>Appendix 2:</b>	180
Summary of the Memorandum of Understanding between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation	
<b>Appendix 3:</b>	182
Key ecosystems and habitats within Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 4:</b>	187
Islands administered by the Department of Conservation in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 5:</b>	190
Priority ecosystem management sites on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy identified by the Department of Conservation through the natural heritage management system in February 2012	
<b>Appendix 6:</b>	194
Pests present in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 7:</b>	207
Flora and fauna present in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 8:</b>	212
Icon species in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 9:</b>	213
Marine habitats and ecosystems in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 10:</b>	220
Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 11:</b>	228
Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 12:</b>	231
Key recreation destinations in Waikato Conservancy	
<b>Appendix 13:</b>	234
Prescriptions for management of visitor management zones	
<b>Appendix 14:</b>	237
Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River	
<b>Appendix 15:</b>	244
Prescriptions for the management of aircraft zones	
<b>Appendix 16:</b>	246
Private accommodation schedule	



# Foreword

Weaving its course from south to north, the Waikato River is a dominant feature of Waikato Conservancy. Flanked on either side by forest-cloaked volcanic cones and ranges, coastal harbours, impressive karst and cave formations and a number of lakes and wetlands flowing back to their tūpuna, the river is the life blood of Waikato. Steeped in cultural significance to Hauraki Whānui the scenic landscape of the Coromandel Range set against a backdrop of spectacular Hauraki Gulf beaches and islands provides a much visited destination for locals and tourists alike.

The Waikato Conservancy has over 500 separate parcels of public conservation land ranging from small pockets of bush set amongst a sea of pasture, to large areas of remnant podocarp forest and is fringed by 1,200 kilometres of diverse and scenic coastline.

The task of managing Waikato Conservancy's conservation lands and waters is a challenging one, but as we strive to maintain and enhance our remaining biodiversity through prioritising our resources and efforts to achieve more conservation through working with others, we will demonstrate we can make a difference.

This Conservation Management Strategy draws on the experience, wisdom and knowledge gained from our management of public conservation lands over the past decade, to prescribe a preferred state for the next 10 years. These decisions for the future are very much in partnership with our communities and this document, through its public consultative process, encapsulates their desires and aspirations for conservation of, and access to, those important conservation areas that, in aggregate, contribute to the identity of Aotearoa New Zealand.

Empowering the community through partnerships and projects exemplifies the collaboration required to manage public conservation lands and waters, where the Department is seeking to protect New Zealand's natural and historic heritage for all to enjoy now and in the future. As the Government progresses with the settlement of historic land claims under the Waitangi Tribunal and through direct negotiation, more partnerships with iwi will emerge to recognise the historic significance of land and resources to iwi throughout the Waikato Conservancy.

Conservation is increasingly recognised as a valuable contributor to New Zealand's long-term economic prosperity. Public conservation lands and waters play a vital role in the provision of important ecosystem services, such as flood protection, and are a major attraction for our tourism industry and play a key role in the sequestration of carbon.

Over the life of this Conservation Management Strategy we hope all will come to treasure our natural and historic heritage and understand the scale of the task to conserve it.

“Kia tupu, kia hua, kia puāwai”

(To grow, to flourish, to blossom)



**Greg Martin**  
Conservator | Manahautu  
Waikato Conservancy

# Pare Hauraki values and interests

The description of Pare Hauraki values and interests is incomplete in the draft conservation management strategy. The text has been developed while the Treaty of Waitangi settlement process for the iwi of Hauraki has been under active negotiation. This means it has not been possible for iwi to engage with this process and for the implications of those values and interests, including in establishing the draft management objectives, to be considered. However, it has been determined by the Department that it is in the wider public interest to notify the rest of the draft conservation management strategy rather than to wait while these matters are resolved. Once negotiations have been completed, amended text relating to iwi values and interests, including any revised objectives, will be subject to public consultation.



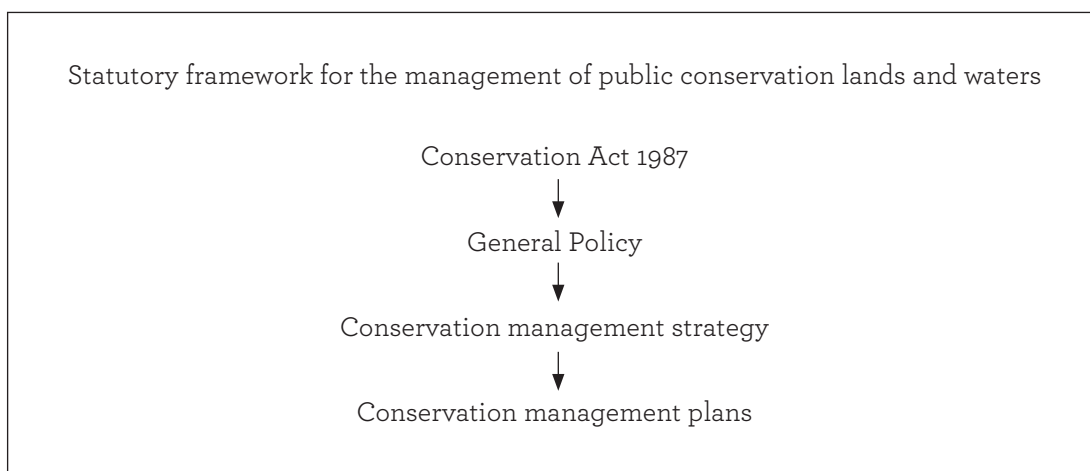
# Introduction

## Purpose of conservation management strategies

Conservation, as defined under section 2 of the Conservation Act 1987 (the Act), is the ‘preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations’.

The purpose of a conservation management strategy (CMS), as defined by section 17D of the Act, is to implement general policies (including the Conservation General Policy 2005), and to establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including species managed by the Department of Conservation (the Department), and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes.

The Act creates a hierarchy of documents to guide the Department in its management. The Act is at the top, the General Policy is next, and below that are the CMSs and conservation management plans. In Waikato Conservancy, there is one operative conservation management plan, the Coromandel Land Management Plan. This Management Plan will be superseded by this CMS and will be revoked when the CMS becomes operative. Other statutory management plans impacting on conservation in Waikato Conservancy will be developed pursuant to Treaty settlement legislation (refer to the section below on conservation management plans).



The general policies relevant to this CMS are the:

- Conservation General Policy 2005, which applies to all conservations lands, waters and resources managed by the Department under the following Acts: the Conservation Act 1987, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.
- Sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000.
- The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River—as recorded in the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, the Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, and the Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012.

Other legislation for which the Minister of Conservation has a role or that is relevant to this CMS includes the Electricity Act 1992, the Freedom Camping Act 2011, the Historic Places Act 1993, the Protected Objects Act 1975, the State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986 and the Walking Access Act 2008.

All public conservation lands and waters must be managed in accordance with the legislation under which they are held. All operative provisions of this CMS must be interpreted and applied in line with that legislation.

The operative parts of this CMS are the objectives, outcome statements, policies and milestones:

- Objectives describe the goals that we want to achieve across the Conservancy, and support national directions and community aspirations to achieve integrated management.
- Outcome statements describe the future state of a 'Place', including its values and changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used when making decisions.
- Milestones are special events that are measurable steps towards achieving the objective or outcome statement.

All other text is provided as supportive background material.

Each CMS is prepared with public participation, according to the process set out in the Conservation Act 1987. Preparation of this CMS has involved two pre-statutory consultation phases and a statutory consultation phase in 2008–2009 for an earlier draft. The first pre-statutory consultation occurred during 2007–2008, and involved meetings and hui with communities throughout Waikato, and the release and receipt of informal submissions on a preliminary draft of the Waikato CMS. Open days were held as part of the statutory consultation phase in 2008, as a result of which 89 submissions were received. The second phase of pre-statutory consultation was held during 2011 and this sought mainly to fill any gaps in the earlier phase. A survey that asked questions about 'Places' was promoted online, via newspaper advertising, through local events and directly to over 800 stakeholders. Offers to meet and face-to-face meetings were held with a range of stakeholders, including interested local authorities, recreation clubs and organisations, and conservation groups. Iwi authorities were informed on several occasions and some face-to-face hui were held. Feedback was received from over 200 people who participated in this process. This CMS has been prepared in consultation with the Waikato Conservation Board.

## **CMS structure**

This CMS describes the conservation values present in Waikato Conservancy, and provides guidance for the Department's work in the form of a vision, objectives, outcomes for Places, policies and milestones, translating the Department's Strategic Outcomes to Waikato Conservancy. The Places described in Part Two of this CMS have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management and require some specific management direction.

This CMS has two volumes. Volume I includes a conservancy vision, objectives and milestones (Part One), outcomes, policies and milestones for Places (Part Two), and other specific policies that address legislative and general policy requirements (Part Three). The vision and objectives in Part One, the policies in Part Three, and objectives in Part Four



cover the entire Conservancy. Public conservation lands and waters that are not identified as a Place are managed in accordance with these provisions. Volume II contains maps and a public conservation land inventory.

## **CMS term**

This CMS will have effect for 10 years, or until formally amended or reviewed. The term of this CMS is from 2014 to 2024.

## **Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools, and other agencies' planning processes**

This CMS must be read in conjunction with the Conservation General Policy, as this is the key statutory tool directing the content of CMSs. Relevant provisions of the Conservation General Policy are not repeated in the CMS.

The Conservation General Policy provides clear direction that each CMS should integrate the management of Places to achieve national conservation outcomes and coordinate planning between Places in other CMSs. To help achieve this integration towards national conservation outcomes, the high-level objectives of the Department's Statement of Intent 2012-17, and national priorities identified through the Department's national decision-making support tools are reflected in this CMS. These tools, including the natural heritage management and destination management systems, identify national priorities for the delivery of the Department's biodiversity, historic and recreation functions. These priorities are identified on Map 2 (Indicative ecosystem and destination priorities).

In this CMS, the term 'priority ecosystem site' refers to a site where conservation work will most effectively contribute to protecting the full range of ecosystems nationally. These sites have been identified through the application of the Department's natural heritage management system.

Threatened species are referred to by their status according to their level of threat of extinction identified in the New Zealand Threat Classification System (2008). Iconic species are those that the public has told the Department help define New Zealand's identity.

References to recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters have been categorised to reflect known demand. 'Icon destinations' are those that the Department has identified as aspirational and unique places that are crucial to domestic and international tourism. 'Gateway destinations' are places that the Department will promote as suitable for people's first adventures in the outdoors, or repeat adventures of a gentle nature. 'Local treasures' are nearby places valued by the local community. 'Backcountry' opportunities are more challenging recreation opportunities in the backcountry. 'Historic icon sites' are an important part of New Zealand's history and identity, and will be the focus of the Department's story telling to bring history to life.

CMSs integrate the Department's national priorities with local priorities that have been identified through consultation with the community. They guide the Department's management of places, business planning, decisions on concessions and other authorisations, and identify opportunities for collaborative efforts to achieve more conservation.

CMSs are part of a wider planning framework. In preparing CMSs, the Conservation General Policy requires that regard be had to local government planning documents. In turn, local government planning is required to have regard to the Department's statutory plans when preparing documents under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). Planning for natural and historic resources can not be undertaken in isolation from wider regional, local government and iwi planning. Integration of this planning framework will ensure that plans and policies work as building blocks to deliver good conservation and environmental outcomes at a regional scale.

## Legislative tools

### Exemption from land use consents

Section 4(3) of the RMA exempts the Department from needing to obtain district council land use consents where activities are consistent with a CMS and do not have significant adverse effects beyond the boundary of public conservation land. Appendix 1 of this CMS lists many activities that the Department considers meet the requirements for an exemption under Section 4(3)(a) and (b) of the RMA. The facilities and activities in Appendix 1 are listed for the sole purpose of enabling the exemption under Section 4(3) of the RMA and do not represent an undertaking in terms of the provision of these facilities.

### Closure of areas

Section 13 of the Conservation Act 1987 enables the Minister of Conservation to close areas administered under that Act for reasons of public safety or emergency. This section also enables the Minister to close areas if a CMS provides for the closure for conservation purposes. Closures of the whole or part of conservation areas may be required in Waikato Conservancy for the following conservation purposes:

- Biosecurity
- Eradication of pests using aerial bait operations
- Protection of a species, or historic or cultural sites
- Tree felling.

### Bylaws and regulations

Bylaws can be established for reserves under the Reserves Act 1977, and regulations can be made for conservation areas and other conservation purposes under the Conservation Act 1987. The Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws 1984, which the Department administers, apply to 15 reserves in the Hauraki Gulf. New bylaws and regulations will be developed with Auckland Conservancy during the term of this CMS to replace these bylaws.

### Conservation management plans

Section 17F of the Conservation Act 1987 provides for the preparation of conservation management plans for the purpose of implementing a CMS, and establishing detailed objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources for a place, or for recreation, tourism or other conservation purposes. The Act provides that the intention to prepare a conservation management plan may be identified in a CMS.

This does not preclude the preparation of management plans, which may come about as a requirement in Treaty Settlement Acts.



In Waikato Conservancy, the conservation component<sup>1</sup> of the following plans (required under Treaty settlement legislation) has dual status as both a conservation management plan and a freshwater fisheries management plan (Section 17J) under the Conservation Act:

- The integrated river management plan for the Waikato River
- The Upper Waikato River integrated management plan
- The Upper Waipa River integrated management plan.

The conservation component of these plans must be jointly approved by the relevant iwi and the Minister of Conservation.

## International obligations

New Zealand is a signatory to many international agreements that are relevant to conservation. The Department implements these agreements in accordance with its functions and has responsibilities for a number of species under these agreements. Some key examples of international agreements of most relevance within Waikato Conservancy include the Convention on Biological Diversity; the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World's Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention); the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wildlife Flora and Fauna (CITES); the International Convention for the Regulation of Whaling; the Convention on Migratory Species; the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat (Ramsar Convention); the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict; the Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property; and the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.

---

<sup>1</sup> The conservation component of each settlement is the component on issues related to conservation management under the conservation legislation.

# Part One

## 1.1 Waikato Conservancy

This section contains a vision and objectives that apply to all public conservation lands, waters and resources in Waikato Conservancy (refer Map 1). Where there is a more specific provision in Part Two or Part Three, the more specific provision prevails.

This section also guides the Department when it advocates for conservation off public conservation lands and waters.

## 1.2 Vision for Waikato—2060

The 50-year Vision sets the long-term picture for the conservation of natural and historic resources of Waikato Conservancy. It goes well beyond the 10-year life of this CMS and may change over time.

The Department of Conservation has a 100-year Vision:

***New Zealand is the greatest living space on Earth***

*Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a Āotearoa, hei wāhi noho i te ao*

This Vision is aspirational, a great deal bigger than just conservation, and a great deal bigger than the Department. It challenges the Department to connect with others in order to achieve it, often in ways that expand the traditional view of the Department's role and who its traditional partners are. In doing so, it requires the Department to build empathy, trust and understanding, so that both traditional and non-traditional audiences engage in a common vision.

Conservation is an investment in New Zealand's future prosperity—with 'prosperity' defined in the broadest economic, cultural, social and environmental terms. The aim is to shift perceptions of conservation as a cost, to conservation as an investment. The Department wants to inspire and involve others to work together to achieve more conservation than it could achieve alone.

It means changing the way people perceive a healthy environment, so that they understand and value spending on nature conservation, seeing that it delivers a broad range of benefits, such as healthy soils, clean air and fresh water. The benefits nature provides are also multi-faceted and broad—they feed our social, physical, cultural and spiritual health, and our wealth. This allows people to be drawn to making New Zealand the greatest living space on Earth through many pathways.

Working towards the 100-year Vision for the Department and the 50-year Vision for Waikato Conservancy, the Department aims to increase the amount of conservation work being achieved over the 20-year period from 2014 to 2034 by building strong local partnerships with tangata whenua, communities, agencies and business.

## **LONG-TERM VISION FOR WAIKATO—2060**

By 2060, the challenge of improving Waikato’s conservation values within the mosaic of a highly fragmented and modified natural landscape has been met.

Waikato’s natural heritage is flourishing. The Department is supporting tangata whenua and communities to protect and enhance coastal and marine environments, forests, wetlands, karst, and rivers. Tangata whenua, having settled historical Treaty claims, are active partners in managing natural, historic and cultural heritage on public conservation land.

The health and well-being of the Waikato River is restored and sustains abundant life as a result of integrated action by tangata whenua, the community, the Department and other agencies.

Waikato’s protected natural and historic heritage plays a vital role in the region’s economic prosperity. Tangata whenua, communities, businesses and individuals join together to participate in conservation in increasing numbers. Landowners are inspired to improve the health of natural areas on private land and achieve greater connectivity with adjoining public conservation land.

With guidance from the Department, each generation accepts the challenge of building on past conservation successes and identifying future issues requiring action, such as controlling invasive pests.

Waikato is a desirable destination in its own right, underpinned by recreation opportunities that showcase its attributes. The Coromandel remains a popular destination for residents of the upper North Island, with greater awareness and connections being made to protect its natural, historic and cultural values. The hidden beauty and biodiversity treasures of Waikato’s wetlands are brought to life. Waitomo and the surrounding karst country deliver an outstanding, internationally renowned and integrated tourism experience. To the southeast, Pureora’s Timber Trail is a model for economic and social renewal of communities through recreation and tourism.

### 1.3 Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato Conservancy

Waikato Conservancy is located in the second fastest growing region in New Zealand, behind Auckland and ahead of the Bay of Plenty. In 2006, the Waikato region had 322 140 people, or 7.8% of the national population, and regional population growth is expected to increase by 0.7% per annum by 2031, to reach just over 468 000 people<sup>2</sup>. This population growth drives intensive urbanisation and coastal and lifestyle property development within a landscape that has already been highly modified, mainly for agriculture.

With more than 20% of the Conservancy's population identifying as Māori, the Waikato has a rich Māori heritage.

With the exception of Pureora and Coromandel Forests, much of the remaining indigenous landscape in the Conservancy is highly fragmented. Agriculture is a major driver of the Waikato economy, with dairy farming being a significant contributor to New Zealand's exports. Thirty percent of all dairy farms in New Zealand are found in the Waikato, which is continuing to experience further intensification of land use, particularly in the dairy farming sector. Within this context, the Department's priority is to continue to maintain and enhance Waikato's natural and historic heritage, particularly vulnerable ecosystems, habitats and species.

#### Water—the life force of the region

Waikato Conservancy's freshwater resources include nationally and internationally significant rivers, wetlands and lakes both on and off public conservation lands and waters. Some of these are legally protected, including a variety of rivers, streams, swamps, peat bogs, lakes and mires.

Waikato's wetland ecosystems are abundant and diverse. Wetlands originally covered some 110 000 ha of the Waikato region, dominating the lowland basins of the lower Waikato and the Hauraki Plains; and although only 30 000 ha remain today, Waikato Conservancy is still a national stronghold for wetlands. Three of New Zealand's six wetlands of international importance under the Ramsar Convention are found here—Whangamarino Wetland, Kopuatai Peat Dome and the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana.

Tangata whenua have strong spiritual, historic and cultural connections with Waikato's wetlands, lakes and rivers. Not only are they important for their intrinsic values, but they are also a valued food source, and provide resources for building and weaving materials. Key issues for tangata whenua include the damming, drainage and pollution of waterways because of their effects on the mauri (life force) of the waterways.

Wetland management is a priority focus for Waikato Conservancy, which manages a number of wetlands, including Whangamarino, Kopuatai and the Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko). The Department also works collaboratively with tangata whenua, communities and other organisations to ensure the protection and ongoing management of other priority wetlands.

The economic value of ecosystem services<sup>3</sup> in the Waikato region is estimated to be approximately 95% (\$12.6 billion in 2010) of Waikato's total Gross Regional Product. Wetland ecosystems were seen as particularly important, accounting for 13% of all ecosystem services in the region. Services of particular economic and ecological importance include storm protection, water supply, flood control, habitat provision, nutrient recycling and waste treatment<sup>4</sup>.

---

2 Opus International Consultants 2011: Destination management framework regional profiles 2011 update: Waikato. Report for the Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

3 The resources and services provided by ecosystems, such as clean drinking water, flood protection and decomposition of waste.

4 Patterson, M.; Cole, A. 1998: The economic value of ecosystem services in the Waikato region. Report prepared for Environment Waikato. Massey University, Palmerston North, New Zealand.



The Waikato River catchment crosses the rohe of Hauraki, Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi, and Ngāti Tūwharetoa. The river has been modified for a range of uses, including electricity generation, but still has a nationally unique lowland river delta with a range of natural values. The Waipa River is a major tributary of the Waikato River and receives significant sediment from its catchments which has a large impact on the natural values of both rivers. Its sub-catchment contains significant karst river headwaters.

The Waihou and Piako River systems, which are adjacent to Kopuatai and drain into the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, are highly degraded, and a source of nutrient enrichment and sedimentation. On the east coast, Coromandel Peninsula catchments are typically small and steep, streams are relatively unmodified, and many headwaters and mid-stream sections are within Coromandel Forest Park.

On the Conservancy's west coast, small, steep coastal catchments without large flood plains predominate. The largest rivers are the Marokopa, Awakino and Mokau. In the south of the Conservancy, the Ongarue River, one of the larger river catchments in the Conservancy, flows into the Whanganui River.

Some of these surface water resources completely or partially occur in locations that are covered as Places in Part Two of this strategy. However, many waterways do not fall within Places and flow through only small areas of public conservation land. Therefore, the Department must work in partnership with tangata whenua, local authorities, landowners, communities and other organisations to ensure that there is appropriate management and sufficient protection for habitats and native species along the entire length of these waterways.

Treaty settlements between the Crown and several Waikato iwi provide a number of mechanisms to achieve co-governance and co-management of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers—refer section 1.4 (Treaty of Waitangi) and section 1.6 (The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato).

### **Fragmented biodiversity**

Large, continuous tracts of indigenous forest are now rare in Waikato Conservancy. The maintenance and enhancement of large areas of native habitat with connecting ecological corridors between fragments brings benefits to habitat diversity, ecological resilience, and species migration and dispersal. It also improves the ability of species to respond and adapt to the effects of climate change. These forests are important for their ecological, cultural, historic, geological and landscape values, as well as for the recreation opportunities and ecosystem services they provide. The large forest park catchments sustain the quality of surface and ground water that are a source of the region's horticultural, agricultural and municipal drinking water supplies. Indigenous ecosystems on public conservation lands and waters also contribute to flood protection, soil conservation and carbon sequestration.

Pureora Forest Park is renowned for its unlogged podocarp forests, which provide important habitat for threatened species including North Island kākā (*Nestor meridionalis*), native bats and North Island kōkako (*Callaeas cinereas*). Frost flat shrublands within the Park also provide habitat for threatened plants such as *Pittosporum turneri* and *Pimelea tomentosa*.

The Coromandel Forest Park and forests from Karioi to Whareorino also contain extensive and largely continuous tracts of indigenous vegetation. Altitudinal sequences of vegetation from coastal to montane types occur at Karioi, Herangi and Moehau. Moehau contains Coromandel brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*), an endemic population of the brown kiwi taxon<sup>5</sup>—and important coastal pōhutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*) forest. This forest type

---

5 There are four geographically and genetically distinct forms of brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*) - Northland brown kiwi, Coromandel brown kiwi, western brown kiwi and eastern brown kiwi. These taxa have been separated geographically and genetically for between 40 000 and 150 000 years.

is also present at Hot Water Beach, Waiomu Ecological Area (in association with rātā (*Metrosideros robusta*), along the Thames Coast and on offshore islands.

At least 21 plant species reach their northern limit at Moehau. The nearest populations of these plant species occur at Mt Hikurangi, some 280 km further southeast. The at risk swamp leek orchid (*Prasophyllum hectorii*) and locally rare *Pittosporum virgatum* are present, as are 14 other locally rare species. Moehau is also home to several endemic invertebrate species, including the Moehau stag beetle (*Geodorcus alsobius*).

The Coromandel Forest Park Whenuakite Block contains the largest area of protected eastern coastal and semi-coastal forest, a vegetation type that is now severely depleted on the Peninsula. Community groups are actively involved in the protection of Coromandel brown kiwi in this area.

Archey's frog (*Leiopelma archeyi*) is restricted to moist, medium- to high-altitude forest habitats in the Herangi and Coromandel Ranges—the only places in New Zealand where natural populations of this acutely threatened species occur.

Outside the Places described in Part Two of this strategy, relatively large areas of lowland podocarp-broadleaf forest habitats are found on the Hapuakohe and Hakarimata Ranges. Forest remnants are also found in upper sections of the Mokau River catchment and at Mapara Wildlife Management Reserve, which provides habitat for the threatened North Island kōkako.

The Mahoenui giant wētā (*Deinacrida mahoenui*), previously considered extinct, was rediscovered in an area of King Country gorse (*Ulex europaeus*) in 1963. This site now has legal protection as the Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve. New populations, including on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) off the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula, are being established through translocations to secure the species long-term future.

Some Waikato indigenous forest areas, such as the volcanic cone Maungatautari, are being managed by local communities. Maungatautari is managed by Waipa District Council and the Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Ecological restoration at Maungatautari includes preventing incursions and eradicating remaining animal pests, maintaining a pest-proof fence, and reintroducing threatened and other native species.

Waikato's highly fragmented forest habitats face greater threats than larger forested areas. These include the invasion of pest plants and animals, the effects of adjoining land use activities (e.g. grazing), and a reduced ability to support indigenous fauna and biodiversity in general. Climate change will potentially have significant effects on biodiversity and ecosystem function, particularly through sea level rises and incursions of new pest plants and animals. Habitat fragmentation will limit the ability of some species to move in response to shifting climatic zones and will reduce the resilience of many ecosystems.

Other threats to natural resources in the Conservancy include the effects of logging, mining, aquaculture, disease, fire, decreased water quality and quantity, drainage, farming, coastal and urban development, invasive plants, and animal pests.

### **Nationally significant karst landscape**

The Waikato includes one of New Zealand's three major karst areas, extending through the western King Country northwards to Port Waikato.

Karst areas form in limestone and have unique geomorphological and ecological features and processes. Caves, blind valleys, disappearing streams and sculpted rock outcrops are all characteristic of karst environments. Within the caves are a valuable and vulnerable range of cave formations, such as stalactites, stalagmites, and scientifically important sediment, bone and fossil deposits.

While glowworms (*Arachnocampa luminosa*) are the most familiar cave invertebrate, there are also troglobite species, such as snails, beetles, harvestmen and pseudoscorpions. On the surface, a variety of plants prefer the chemistry and refugia that karst offers. The fern *Asplenium cimmeriorum* and *Awaroa hebe* (*Hebe scopulorum*) are found only in karst areas. Tawarau forest is unique as a large piece of forested North Island karst that has essentially intact vegetation and biogeochemical processes. The forested limestone gorge at Grand Canyon Nature Reserve provides habitat for one of the largest known pekapeka/long-tailed bat (*Chalinolobus tuberculatus*) populations in the country.

Karst areas are highly significant for tangata whenua, and the damage and desecration of caves is a key concern. Other threats that are unique to karst areas include changes to surface vegetation, farming and forestry, sedimentation, flooding, mining, and unmanaged recreation and tourism activities in cave systems. Total catchment management (above and below ground) is important for the protection of karst values.

A number of important caves are on conservation land, including the well-known Waitomo tourist caves. The Waitomo District provides the most readily accessible and numerous caving opportunities in New Zealand, with the Waitomo Glowworm Cave, Ruakuri Cave and Aranui Cave providing a commercially operated caving experience to a large number of visitors, both domestic and international.

### **East and west—distinctly different coastal environments**

The Waikato Conservancy coastline covers 1150 km, with the west coast's mostly sparsely settled and exposed coastline contrasting with the east coast's more intensively developed Coromandel Peninsula and Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana. It includes estuaries, intertidal harbours, rocky reefs, sandy beaches and offshore islands, and provides habitat for regionally and nationally threatened coastal and marine species.

Some of the earliest Māori settlement sites in New Zealand are found on the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula. There are numerous pā and kāinga sites, and urupā along both coasts of the Conservancy, which are particularly concentrated around harbours and estuaries. Providing access to kaimoana (seafood) and taking effective action to improve harbour health are issues of particular importance to tangata whenua.

The Conservancy sits within two biogeographic regions. The northeast region extends down the east coast of the North Island from Cape Reinga (Te Rerengawairua) to East Cape and is influenced by the East Auckland Current. The central region extends down the west coast of the Conservancy, and is influenced by the northward-flowing Westland Current and the southward-flowing West Auckland Current, both of which are of subtropical origin.

Coastal areas provide habitat for a range of threatened seabirds. The Coromandel Peninsula supports approximately 60% of the total national population of tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus*). The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana and other coastal harbours, including Aotea and Kawhia Harbours, provide important feeding and wintering grounds for endemic species such as ngutuparore/wrybill (*Anarhynchus frontalis*) and tōrea/South Island pied oystercatcher (*Haematopus ostralegus finschi*), and for east Asian-Australasian migrants, such as kuaka/bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*) and huahou/lesser or red knot (*Calidris canutus*).

Most Waikato harbours and estuaries provide excellent shore and estuarine bird habitat. For example, Kawhia and Aotea Harbours and the lower Waikato River mouth, have been assessed as internationally significant sites for shorebirds, and meet the criteria for inclusion as wetlands of international importance under the Ramsar Convention. The ecological quality of Waikato's harbours and estuaries is influenced by sediment and nutrient inputs from surrounding catchments, and land use activities adjacent to and along the harbour and estuary margins. Most of the coastal environments referred to above have

been identified as Areas of Significant Conservation Value in the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan (2004). Identifying other outstanding, rare, distinctive, and nationally or internationally significant sites is important, and such sites will be priorities for protection.

The protection of shorebird feeding areas, and roosting and nesting sites from development and disturbance by humans, domestic animals and animal pests is important. Awareness of national and international flyways (migratory paths) that connect these habitat areas and the integrated management of both the areas and flyways is vital for maintaining their ecological integrity. The Department works in conjunction with tangata whenua, communities, organisations and territorial authorities to ensure that appropriate management and sufficient protection are provided for these habitats (including migratory pathways) and their associated native species.

Waikato's harbours and estuaries support populations of many important fish species, providing a haven for spawning and juvenile fish. They also provide recreation opportunities, including boating, swimming, windsurfing, fishing and kayaking. While the Department does not administer most harbours and estuaries, it does administer scattered reserves and marginal strips surrounding some harbours, and has responsibility for protecting indigenous species, and advocating for the protection of ecosystems and indigenous species at these locations.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 covers the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana and the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula (to Waihi Beach) (Te Tai Tamahine) within Waikato Conservancy. It includes all adjacent islands managed by the Department, Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve<sup>6</sup>, and terrestrial public conservation land within the catchments that adjoin the Marine Park. This Act established the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, and promotes the conservation and sustainable management of the natural, historical and cultural resources of the Hauraki Gulf, its islands and catchments (refer section 1.7).

New Zealand waters contain 41 species of whales, dolphins and porpoises, and nine species of seals. The marine mammal species that are most frequently encountered in Waikato Conservancy are common (*Delphinus capensis*) and bottlenose (*Tursiops truncatus*) dolphins, orca (*Orcinus orca*), Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera brydei*), and kekeno/New Zealand fur seal (*Arctocephalus forsteri*). There are known fur seal rookeries at Karewa/Gannet Island, Tirua Point and Albatross Point, and a small haul-out on the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua).

Particular focus is placed on the protection of the threatened Maui's dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*), a sub-species of Hector's dolphin. Maui's dolphin, which is the world's smallest and rarest marine dolphin, is found only on the west coast of the North Island of New Zealand and has an estimated population size of fewer than 100 individuals. Entanglement in set nets poses a major threat to this species, as do trawling, seabed mining, marine pollution and disease.

### **Diverse communities—from the King Country to the Coromandel**

Waikato Conservancy comprises diverse communities that have differing socioeconomic circumstances, a rich heritage and increasing involvement in conservation. The extent of protected areas across the Conservancy reflects a complex history of Māori and European occupation (including warfare), changes in resource use (e.g. mining, logging, and food production and gathering) and conservation action.

---

<sup>6</sup> 'Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve' is the legal gazetted name of this Marine Reserve.



Hamilton, the region's largest city, is home to 41% of the Conservancy's population and has increasing cultural diversity. Surrounding Hamilton City, the Waipa and Waikato Districts contain a further 30% of the Conservancy's population. Coromandel Peninsula is a popular destination for holiday home owners and tourists by virtue of its proximity to Auckland, Hamilton and Tauranga—the population swells to five times its usual size over summer. The southern part of the Conservancy, which incorporates much of the King Country, is largely rural and is experiencing a slow population decline, particularly in isolated, more sparsely populated areas.

Hamilton has a long history of leadership in environmental action, with the nationally successful Enviroschools Programme having been founded in the city, and is one of the leading participants in the Communities for Climate Protection<sup>7</sup>. Initiatives that the Department has been partner to include Project Halo, which aims to bring more native birds back into the city, and Project Echo, which involves the collection of information on the resident population of pekapeka/long-tailed bats.

The Waikato and Waipa Districts are very diverse, with Ngaruawahia being a cultural hub for Waikato-Tainui iwi; Cambridge servicing the dairy and equine industry; and Raglan providing a seaside lifestyle and a holiday destination. Within the Waikato and Waipa Districts, the Department's focus has been on working with tangata whenua, communities, local government and other agencies on a wide range of conservation initiatives, including wetland and coastal habitat protection and enhancement, threatened species protection, and remnant forest restoration. The national Agricultural Fieldays, held at Mystery Creek each year, provides a valuable opportunity for the Department to raise awareness and encourage the public to become more involved in conservation.

The communities on the Coromandel Peninsula are diverse and have different perspectives on conservation and resource extraction. For example, community opposition to mining culminated in legislative changes in 1997 to restrict this activity on the Peninsula; but, on the other hand, there are generations of families with connections to gold mining and the heritage associated with it.

A shared community vision for the future of the Coromandel Peninsula has been developed that sees the environment as being central to the community's well-being and vitality<sup>8</sup>. The Department's focus has been on supporting and partnering a number of conservation initiatives, including the New Zealand Dotterel Watch Programme and community-based restoration programmes. The Department also provides recreation opportunities that capitalise on the Peninsula's natural and historic heritage, and supports tangata whenua, communities and businesses to provide increased opportunities for participation and prosperity. The community's high interest in the Department providing further recreation opportunities and expanding efforts in biodiversity protection poses a significant challenge.

Otorohanga and Te Kuiti are the major agricultural service centres in the southern part of the Conservancy. Beyond them is the tourist settlement of Waitomo, the coastal settlements of Marakopa and Kawhia/Aotea (which are becoming popular in summer), and inland rural settlements such as Bennydale and Poipoi. Local iwi have a long history of involvement in conservation, particularly species translocations. Community conservation initiatives are increasing in this part of the Conservancy, led by both local groups and groups from urban centres, such as Auckland. Examples include programmes for North Island kōkako, brown kiwi, tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel and whio/blue duck (*Hymenolaimus*

---

7 Hamilton City Council 2008: Environmental Sustainability Strategy for Hamilton: engaging our city. Hamilton City Council, Hamilton, New Zealand.

8 Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint Political Steering Group 2009: Coromandel Peninsula blueprint: framework for our future: summary. Thames Coromandel District Council, Thames, New Zealand.

*malacorhynchos*), and catchment management partnerships with Waikato Regional Council and local communities. Increasing the number of community-led conservation initiatives is a challenge for this part of the Conservancy, due to its declining population and isolated communities.

### **Recreation and tourism opportunities at the cross roads**

The Conservancy's mix of mountains, plains, forests, shrublands, wetlands, karst and coastal landscapes, cultural heritage, and natural resources offers visitors an extensive choice of attractions. Meeting the diverse demands and aspirations of the many recreational users in Waikato Conservancy is challenging.

Over 50% of New Zealand's population lives within a 90-minute drive of Waikato Conservancy and an active boating community is able to access the Coromandel coastline within 1–2 hours from Auckland. In 2007, 20% of international visitors to New Zealand stopped in the Waikato. However, most international visitors arriving into Auckland drive through the Waikato to Rotorua, Taupo<sup>9</sup> and other popular destinations. Thus, there is the opportunity to work with local government and regional tourism organisations to increase the profile of significant destinations in the Conservancy.

Recreation has the potential to play a key role in developing understanding of and support for conservation by attracting more (and new) people to take advantage of opportunities provided on public conservation lands and waters. It is essential to maintain an awareness of changing trends in the recreation sector, and to consider whether new trends can be catered for on public conservation lands and waters, or as part of a strategic approach with other conservancies and/or other recreation providers.

Forming strategic alliances with recreation providers and organisations, and encouraging active involvement from the public will help to ensure that Waikato Conservancy provides an integrated range of recreation opportunities and services, both on and off public conservation lands and waters.

Recreation opportunities in Waikato Conservancy are available in a diverse range of settings, from urban (provided mainly by others such as local authorities), through to rural, front country and backcountry, to limited, remote experience opportunities. The Conservancy provides extensive walking and tramping opportunities, primarily in the Coromandel, Pureora and Pirongia Forest Parks, and Tawarau and Whareorino Forests (further detailed in Part Two—Places). Waikato's neighbouring conservancies provide complementary outdoor recreation opportunities, notably in the Whanganui and Tongariro National Parks, and the volcanic and geothermal regions of the Bay of Plenty.

Walking and tramping tracks also provide access for recreational users to enjoy activities such as fishing, picnicking, snorkelling, boating and historic site exploration. Some tracks are also designated for use by mountain bikes, four-wheel drives, quad bikes and trail bikes. Hunting is a popular activity in the Conservancy, both as a recreational activity and as a means of food gathering, with opportunities available for hunting introduced animals, such as deer, goats (*Capra hircus*), pigs (*Sus scrofa*) and game birds.

Most Waikato Conservancy campsites, are accessible by vehicle, and located on the Coromandel Peninsula and in Pureora Forest Park. The northern Coromandel provides camping experiences in a remote coastal setting, while the Kauaeranga Valley, southern Coromandel and Pureora provide opportunities in attractive bush locations. The sale of

---

<sup>9</sup> Zahra, A.; Walter, N. 2007: The Waikato region: major tourism issues and opportunities to facilitate tourism development: public summary. A report commissioned by Katolyst, University of Waikato, Hamilton, New Zealand.

privately-owned camping grounds, particularly on the Coromandel Peninsula, has led to the Department exploring options to expand the provision of camping opportunities on public conservation lands.

Cathedral Cove and Hot Water Beach are significant attractions for national and international visitors to the Coromandel. Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve at Hahei has a snorkel trail and a range of water-based recreation opportunities.

Te Araroa—The Long Pathway<sup>10</sup> is a trail from Cape Reinga (Te Rerengawairua) to Bluff, which provides opportunities for visitors to experience environments both on and off public conservation lands. It crosses public conservation lands within Waikato Conservancy, utilising existing walking tracks in the Hakarimata Scenic Reserve, Pirongia Forest Park and Pureora Forest Park. A collaborative approach with councils, the Te Araroa Trust and communities could provide further significant recreation and conservation awareness opportunities along and linking to Te Araroa.

The Timber Trail, located in Pureora Forest Park, is a cycling track that forms part of the New Zealand Cycle Trail—Nga Haerenga. It provides multi-day recreational cycling and walking experiences from Pureora Village, southwards to Ongarue, near Taumaranui. Further information on the Timber Trail can be found in section 2.8: Pureora in Part Two of this strategy.

Although increased visitation and enjoyment are primary goals for recreation, the Department will monitor impacts and the quality of visitor experiences to ensure that adverse effects are minimised. This may mean limiting certain activities or managing visitor levels to maintain the quality of the visitor experience, reduce conflict, minimise site degradation and/or ensure public safety.

## 1.4 Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities

The Conservation Act 1987 and all the Acts listed in its First Schedule must be interpreted and administered to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Conservation Act 1987: section 4). The Department also has specific responsibilities under Treaty settlement legislation.

The Department recognises the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki and acknowledges their mana whenua, the special relationship they have with the land and its resources. Of all things, it is the land that Māori hold most precious. The land is papatūānuku (Earth Mother) and needs to be cared for if she is to provide water, food, shelter and life's essentials. Conservation and respect for the land was an integral facet of traditional Māori life and was practiced on a daily basis. Māori were kaitiaki (guardians) of the land during their lifetime and were responsible for ensuring that the land was handed on to the next generation in the same or better condition than they had received it.

Some of the most important wāhi tapu sites and places of ancestral significance in Waikato Conservancy are on public conservation lands and waters. Physical and spiritual characteristics, including pā sites, urupā (burial grounds), waka landings, māra kai (cultivation sites), mātaitai (seafood gathering areas) and wāhi pakanga (battle sites), are clearly visible. The four main iwi that descend from the Tainui Waka—Waikato, Maniapoto, Raukawa and Hauraki—have an environmental whakapapa that is special and clearly identifies their relationship between the tangible and intangible.

---

<sup>10</sup> [www.teararoa.org.nz](http://www.teararoa.org.nz)

Effective partnerships with tangata whenua help to achieve conservation of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage. Relationships with tangata whenua vary, and take a unique form with different iwi or hapū, or with respect to individual places, species or resources. The Crown's Treaty of Waitangi settlement process is creating new relationships with Māori. The special and traditional relationships of claimant groups with the natural environment are often explicitly recognised, and claimant groups are better able to participate in decision-making processes.

### **Waikato-Tainui**

The ancestral lands of Waikato-Tainui encompass all lands within the Tainui Waka rohe (region). This territory, along with that of Ngaati Maniapoto, forms the heart of the King Movement or Kiingitanga. Waikato-Tainui's relationship with the Waikato River and west coast harbours (Raglan, Aotea and Kawhia) extends back over many generations, since the time of the first inland explorations of the ancestors who brought the Tainui canoe to Aotearoa in the 14th century. The Waikato Raupatu Claims Settlement Act 1995 formalised Waikato-Tainui's relationship with much of their ancestral lands and associated resources, including forests. The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 formalised Waikato-Tainui's relationship with the Waikato River, and set out co-governance and co-management arrangements for the Waikato River, including the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (refer section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato). Further Treaty settlements relating to west coast harbours are expected to produce additional partnership opportunities.

### **Ngāti Maniapoto**

Ngāti Maniapoto, an iwi of the Tainui Confederation, occupies the southern region of the territory of the Tainui tribes—Pirongia, Mōkau, Ongarue, Benneydale and Otorohanga. Ngāti Maniapoto are tangata whenua of the Maniapoto area. Te Maru o Rereahu, Te Ihingarangi, is also recognised as tangata whenua within the rohe of Maniapoto.

Ngāti Maniapoto are kaitiaki (guardians) of their rohe. The iwi is firm in its commitment to protect and restore the health of the environment, and seeks greater involvement in monitoring and managing natural and physical resources within its rohe.

The Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 passed into law on 5 April 2012, formalising the enduring relationship of Maniapoto with the Waipa River. It sets out co-governance and co-management arrangements for the Waipa River and its catchment, which extends to the headwaters of the river at Pekepeke Spring in the Rangitoto Ranges. The overarching purpose is to restore and maintain the quality and integrity of the waters that flow into and form part of the Waipa River for present and future generations, and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwai<sup>11</sup>. A primary component of this settlement is the Upper Waipa River Integrated Management Plan, the conservation component of which must be approved jointly by the Maniapoto Trust Board and the Minister of Conservation. The Minister of Conservation entered into a Conservation Accord with Ngāti Maniapoto in respect of the Waipa River in September 2012. The Department must also have regard to the Maniapoto Iwi Environmental Management Plan<sup>12</sup>. Outcomes for the Waipa River are also linked to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (refer section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato).

---

<sup>11</sup> Waiwai refers to the essence and well-being of the Waipa River. To Maniapoto, waiwai is the personification of the waters of the Waipa River and its enduring spiritual guardian.

<sup>12</sup> Kowhai Consulting 2007: He Mahere Taiao—The Maniapoto Iwi Environmental Management Plan. Kowhai Consulting Ltd for the Maniapoto Māori Trust Board. Te Kuiti, New Zealand.



### ***Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust***

The Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust is affiliated to Ngāti Maniapoto and has interests in the Waitomo/Hauturu area. The Waitomo Glowworm Caves Claim WAI 51 was implemented and signed on 14 June 1990. The document was an Agreement to Licence Waitomo Glowworm Caves, which was signed by the Minister of Conservation, Tourist Hotel Corporation (THC), and the hapū of Ruapuha and Uekaha ('the Claimants'), being the descendants of the original owners of Hauturu East Block Nos 1A5B, 1A6 and 3B1. The resulting arrangements saw the interests in the land recognised by the Trust holding a 75% interest and the Crown retaining its 25% interest through the Department of Conservation. An Agreement in Principle provided for 3 acres of the cave area to be vested in the claimants with 1 acre to remain vested in the Crown. The management of the caves is now shared between the claimants and the Department of Conservation, who work in partnership to preserve ecological and Māori interests in the area.

### ***Te Maru o Rereahu Trust***

The Te Maru o Rereahu Trust is affiliated to Ngāti Maniapoto and represents the descendants of the original owners of Maraeroa A and B Blocks, near Pureora. The Maraeroa A and B Blocks Incorporation Act 2012 and the Maraeroa A and B Blocks Settlement Act 2012 both implement parts of the Deed of Settlement relating to the post-settlement governance arrangements for the management of the Maraeroa A and B Blocks. This includes a Partnership Agreement between the 'post settlement governance entity' (PSGE) structure and the Department of Conservation for the management of public conservation land within the Maraeroa A and B Blocks, including statutory acknowledgement for 12 wāhi tapu and the overlay site Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora), to which specific protection principles apply. The Deed of Settlement also provides for a conservation corridor that will link two large areas of indigenous forest in the Pureora Forest Park, and a plan for the restoration of the corridor area between central government and the PSGE structure.

Te Maru o Rereahu has particular interests surrounding Pureora. Pā Harakeke and the Maraeroa Cycleway at Pureora are two initiatives by this iwi that contribute to conservation values and expand on public recreation opportunities.

### ***Raukawa***

Within Waikato Conservancy, the Raukawa takiwā (tribal area) includes Atiamuri, Mokai, Mangakino, Te Awamutu, Kihikihi, Maungatautari, Arapuni, Matamata, Cambridge, Putaruru, Tirau and Tokoroa. Over generations, Raukawa has developed tikanga (protocols) that embody a profound respect for their tribal area and all life within it. Raukawa tikanga recognise that an environment which people care for will continue to sustain those people into the future. Raukawa forms part of the Central North Island Collective Forests Settlement and they received an on-account settlement of their forestry assets in June 2009. They have also been part of the Waikato River Treaty settlement processes and secured co-governance and co-management agreements in relation to their interests in the river and its catchment under the Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 (refer section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato).

The Crown and Raukawa (Raukawa ki Waikato) signed a Deed of Settlement on 2 June 2012, which outlines the Department's obligations within the Raukawa area. Places of significance that are recognised include Titiraupenga, Pureora o Kahu, Wharepūhunga, parts of Pureora Forest Park, and the Waipa and Waikato Rivers and their catchments.

## Ngāti Korokī Kahukura

Ngāti Korokī Kahukura is a Tainui tribe that has connections to both Waikato and Raukawa. The traditional rohe of Ngāti Korokī Kahukura extends north to Horotiu Pā (which was in the Te Rapa region of Hamilton), and then west to Puahue, east to Puketutu, and south through Waipa, Huihuitaha, Waotu North, Waotu South, Matanuku, Maraetai and Wharepuhunga to Waipapa.

## Pouakani

The Pouakani people are a community that have Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Ngāti Maniapoto, Raukawa and Te Arawa affiliations. A Deed of Settlement was signed on 19 November 1999 by the Crown and the Te Putahitanga O Nga Ara Trust (the Pouakani Claims Trust—the mandated representative of the Pouakani people). The Pouakani Claims Settlement Act 2000 gives effect to certain provisions of the Deed of Settlement. The Act afforded a statutory acknowledgement over the part of Titiraupenga that is located in Pureora Forest Park. A Memorandum of Understanding between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation outlines how the Department of Conservation and the Pouakani people interact in regard to the management of specified areas of Crown land and Māori-owned land in Pureora Forest Park and Pouakani Scenic Reserve, the purpose of which reads:

*To enable both Pouakani and the Department to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost co-operation. The Memorandum sets out a framework that will enable the Department and Pouakani to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship.*

Refer to Appendix 2 for a summary of the Memorandum of Understanding.

## Hauraki Whānui

Hauraki Whānui are often referred to as Ngā Tai Papakitoru, which recognises the three waves of settlement to Hauraki—the original tribes, the Marutūahu tribes and iwi that were gifted land in Hauraki.

The Coromandel Peninsula is commonly known as Te Tara o Te Whai, the figurative ama (outrigger), with its prow at Mt Te Aroha and its stern at Mt Moehau. As a coastal people, Hauraki depended on the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana and Te Tai Tamahine for their physical and spiritual sustenance, and these remain a pervading presence in their lives. The catchments of Te Tara O Te Ika, where the great kauri (*Agathis australis*) forests stood, to the inland awa of Waihou and Piako and their tributaries, where once vast and plentiful wetlands and kahikatea (*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*) forests stood, extend across the western part of the Hauraki rohe. The conservation of these taonga is significantly important to Hauraki Whānui.

It is expected that Treaty settlement arrangements with the Hauraki Collective<sup>13</sup> and individual Hauraki iwi will create new partnership opportunities and recognition of places of significance to Hauraki Whānui on public conservation lands and waters.

---

<sup>13</sup> Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki, Ngāti Hako, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Maru, Ngāti Pāoa, Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki, Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Rahiri Tumutumu, Ngāti Tamaterā, Ngāti Tara Tokanui, Ngāti Whanaunga and Te Patukirikiri.

## Tuwharetoa Iwi

Ngāti Tuwharetoa holds mana whenua and kaitiakitanga over the Central Plateau rohe. The boundary of their rohe, called the Taupo-Nui-a-Tia Block, was supported by the Native Land Court in 1886. Ngāti Tuwharetoa is the legal owner of the bed of Taupo-Nui-a-Tia (Lake Taupo (Taupomoana)) and the beds of its tributaries. Much of the rohe overlaps with the Department's Tongariro/Whanganui/Taranaki Conservancy. The Tongariro/Taupo Conservation Management Strategy refers to He Kaupapa Rangatira, a relationship protocol to implement and monitor the achievement of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. Part of the rohe, including the eastern side of Pureora Forest Park that flows into the Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) catchment, is in Waikato Conservancy.

Ngāti Tuwharetoa is kaitiaki for the physical and spiritual well-being of its environment.

### OBJECTIVES

- 1.4.1 Maintain and strengthen relationships with tangata whenua to enhance conservation and recognise mana. These relationships should be based on mutual good faith, cooperation and respect.
- 1.4.2 Formalise relationships, where appropriate, through agreements with tangata whenua to enhance and support those relationships.
- 1.4.3 Actively consult and work with tangata whenua, ensuring consultation is early, ongoing, informed and effective.
- 1.4.4 Consider customary practices and the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species by tangata whenua, consistent with kaitiakitanga, the relevant legislation, regulations, general policies and the purposes for which the land is held.
- 1.4.5 Encourage tangata whenua involvement and participation in conservation management on public conservation lands and waters.
- 1.4.6 Promote integrated conservation management for areas adjoining public conservation lands or waters that have been returned to tangata whenua through Treaty of Waitangi settlements.
- 1.4.7 Work with tangata whenua to advocate for the protection of mahinga kai, wāhi tapu and other cultural resources located outside public conservation lands in accordance with Treaty settlement outcomes.
- 1.4.8 Work with tangata whenua to establish formal protocols to:
  - a) enable the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species; and
  - b) guide the management of marine mammal strandings.
- 1.4.9 Contribute to the process of considering Treaty of Waitangi claims relevant to the Department of Conservation's functions, and implement any future Treaty of Waitangi settlements that affect the management of public conservation lands and waters.

## 1.5 Waikato Conservancy by 2024

**The key organisational outcomes to be delivered by management of conservation resources within Waikato Conservancy over the next 10 years**

Map 2, showing ecosystem and destination priorities in Waikato Conservancy (Volume II), demonstrates how Waikato Conservancy's outcomes fit into the jigsaw of priority ecosystem and recreation outcomes identified by the Department.

### 1.5.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored

Section 1.3 outlines the themes that make Waikato an important place for natural heritage, the pressures that make Waikato's natural heritage vulnerable to further decline and the opportunities that need to be pursued into the future.

Places the Department considers nationally important for natural heritage management in Waikato Conservancy are outlined in Appendices 3–5 and include:

- Wetlands, lakes and rivers
- Island sanctuaries off the Coromandel Peninsula
- Coastal dunes and harbours
- Mainland forest remnants ranging from coastal to montane forests
- Karst ecosystems
- Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve.

Pest plants and animals found in Waikato Conservancy are outlined in Appendix 6. Threatened, at risk and icon species present in Waikato Conservancy are outlined in Appendices 7 and 8.

Locally treasured species include North Island kōkako, brown kiwi, North Island kākā, kererū/New Zealand pigeon (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*), toutouwai/North Island robin (*Petroica longipes*), tūī (*Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae*), tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, whio/blue duck, matuku/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), kāeaea/New Zealand falcon (*Falco novaeseelandiae*), pāteke/brown teal (*Anas chlorotis*), shorebirds, seabirds, mudfish, tuna/eel, whitebait species, wētā, bats, Maui's dolphin, lizards, northern tuatara (*Sphenodon punctatus punctatus*), Archey's frog and Hochstetter's frog (*Leiopelma hochstetteri*). The community particularly values undertaking conservation work in their own 'backyard'. The Department supports this with technical and operational advice across a range of sites in the Conservancy.

Priority areas for marine protection will be identified through collaborative planning processes with other agencies such as the Ministry of Primary Industries and Hauraki Gulf Forum. Section 1.3 and Appendix 9 identify some habitats that have high conservation value, including harbours, intertidal areas such as the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, and coastal areas featuring rocky reefs and soft sediments.

Internationally and regionally significant geological landforms and landscapes in Waikato Conservancy are listed in Appendix 10.



## OBJECTIVES

- 1.5.1.1 Contribute to building a national network of representative ecosystems conserved to a healthy functioning state, focusing on the priority ecosystem sites listed in Appendices 3 and 5.
- 1.5.1.2 Contribute to efforts to ensure the persistence<sup>14</sup> of nationally threatened species<sup>15</sup>, as listed in Appendix 7.
- 1.5.1.3 Contribute to efforts to maintain or restore the nationally iconic species listed in Appendix 8 that occur locally.
- 1.5.1.4 Build partnerships with others to maintain or restore locally treasured natural heritage.
- 1.5.1.5 Contribute to building a nationally representative network of marine protected areas, taking into account the marine ecosystems listed in Appendix 9.
- 1.5.1.6 Focus on integrated conservation management to improve the quality and functioning of the representative range of priority ecosystem sites.
- 1.5.1.7 Advocate for the protection of priority natural heritage, such as priority ecosystems, threatened and at risk species, and significant landscapes and landforms selected from Appendix 10 outside public conservation lands and waters within Waikato Conservancy.
- 1.5.1.8 Work with local government, tangata whenua and other organisations to identify and protect karst, freshwater and marine ecosystems (listed in Appendix 9), and habitats and species that are under the most threat, or identified as nationally or regionally outstanding, rare, distinctive or of international importance.
- 1.5.1.9 Work with the Ministry of Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua and others to manage threats to marine mammals, particularly Maui's dolphin, to ensure their recovery and protection.
- 1.5.1.10 Reduce the effects of habitat fragmentation, and protect migratory pathways and dispersal options for indigenous fauna, in collaboration with tangata whenua, communities, territorial authorities and other organisations.
- 1.5.1.11 Control pest plants and animals (identified in Appendix 6) to improve the quality and functioning of the ecosystems identified in Part Two—Places of this CMS, and the ecosystems and habitats outside those Places identified in Appendices 3–5, and to protect significant populations of indigenous species at the highest risk of loss within Waikato Conservancy.
- 1.5.1.12 Foster recreational and commercial hunting and pest control on public conservation lands and waters where this is consistent with the planned outcomes for Places and does not diminish the effectiveness of the Department's operations to control introduced animals.

---

<sup>14</sup> Persistence is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer).

<sup>15</sup> 'Nationally threatened species' in this context are all species categorised as threatened (nationally critical, nationally endangered, nationally vulnerable) and at risk (declining).

- 1.5.1.13 Contain deer within their gazetted feral range<sup>16</sup> in collaboration with tangata whenua, communities, landowners, hunting groups and other organisations.
- 1.5.1.14 Work with others to undertake strategic and integrated catchment management around harbours and estuaries; seek further protection of harbours and estuaries; and restore intertidal ecosystems and habitats, and protect indigenous and migratory species.
- 1.5.1.15 Advocate for the integrated management of Raglan (Whaingaroa), Aotea and Kawhia Harbours and their catchments.
- 1.5.1.16 Work with Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game to protect sports fisheries, game bird habitat and hunting opportunities on public conservation lands and waters, while minimising any adverse effects of hunting and introduced species on indigenous species and their habitats.
- 1.5.1.17 Progress changing the classification of public conservation land to better reflect the primary values of that land, including changes identified in Part Two of this CMS.
- 1.5.1.18 Review the Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws in conjunction with Auckland Conservancy to enable better management of public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy.

---

<sup>16</sup> As defined in: Department of Conservation 2008: Deer Farming Notice No. 5, 2008: Pursuant to Section 12A of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. New Zealand Gazette 125: 3239–3257.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of work programmes at priority ecosystem sites identified in the milestones in Part Two and at sites outside Places, including Hakarimata Scenic Reserve and Aotea Harbour Dunes has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway has been completed.
- Collaborative restoration opportunities for ecosystems and threatened and at risk species have been identified, in conjunction with tangata whenua, the community and others.
- Public hunting areas have been reviewed, and revised in line with national standards.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Report on the number of additional priority ecosystem sites that have work programmes implemented has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway has been completed.
- The Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws and regulations over public conservation lands and waters have been reviewed in conjunction with Auckland Conservancy.
- The success of existing threat management programmes for possums (*Trichosurus vulpecula*), goats and plant threats at Places identified in Part Two of this CMS and other vulnerable ecosystems have been reviewed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Report on the number of additional priority ecosystem sites that have work programmes implemented has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway has been completed.

#### **1.5.2 History is protected and brought to life**

In Waikato Conservancy, the Department has identified 44 significant historical and cultural sites for active management (Appendix 11). These include pā sites, sites with Māori rock art, and sites with historically significant logging and gold-mining themes. Thirty-nine of these sites are located within the Places identified in Part Two of this CMS, while the remainder are on other public conservation lands and waters. There is ongoing work to prevent the loss of the historic value of these sites and to restore them where appropriate. The Timber Trail at Pureora has been identified as a proposed Historic Icon Site.

The Department will focus on fulfilling its core obligation to actively conserve the most significant sites identified on public conservation lands and waters. This includes ensuring that places of significance to tangata whenua are managed and protected in a way that respects cultural values, iwi, hapū and whanau. The Department seeks to acknowledge people's connection with their heritage through the enhanced management of these

key sites. The aim is to protect these sites while providing for increased awareness and participation by the community to ensure a memorable visitor experience.

Active conservation requires a planned programme of work that takes into account threats, condition, technical feasibility, future use and resource levels. Visitor facilities that are appropriate to the recreational setting may be provided to complement the historic values of sites of high significance.

Places where the Department will focus effort to ensure that history is brought to life in Waikato Conservancy are listed in Appendix 11 and include:

- Logging and gold-mining sites, including kauri dams in the Kauaeranga Valley
- Abandoned mines in the central and southern Coromandel
- Timber milling heritage sites, including hauler sites in Pureora
- Pā sites, including those connected with the New Zealand Land Wars
- Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse complex and World War II defences.

## **OBJECTIVES**

- 1.5.2.1 Understand the location, nature and condition of historic places on public conservation land, and ensure that records of these places are up to date.
- 1.5.2.2 Profile the historic icon sites and selected actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 11 through quality interpretation both on- and off-site, to enable visitors to identify with historic places and their stories.
- 1.5.2.3 Prioritise and protect the actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 11 on the basis of their historic, cultural and physical significance, their value to tangata whenua and the wider community, and their conservation need.
- 1.5.2.4 Understand the expectations of tangata whenua, the communities and others regarding the protection and management of historic places on public conservation land.
- 1.5.2.5 Build relationships with tangata whenua, communities and business to increase understanding, skill and active support for historic places.
- 1.5.2.6 Develop the historic icon sites listed in Appendix 11 and selected actively conserved places to enhance the visitor experience by making the places accessible, safe, interesting, attractive and engaging.
- 1.5.2.7 Work cooperatively with tangata whenua to protect and interpret (where agreed) places of cultural significance, especially where Treaty settlements identify specific obligations for the Department.
- 1.5.2.8 Encourage collaborative efforts between tangata whenua, communities and others to protect, restore and interpret historic and cultural heritage sites.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Heritage assessment reports have been completed for the historic places listed in Appendix 11.
- Information on actively conserved historic places is available on the Department's website.
- Report on the number of actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 11 that are stable and not deteriorating has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Report on the number of actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 11 that are stable and not deteriorating has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Report on the number of actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 11 that are stable and not deteriorating has been completed.

### **1.5.3 More people participate in recreation**

Waikato residents are less likely than residents of other regions to visit their local public conservation lands and waters within Waikato Conservancy<sup>17</sup>. This represents a significant opportunity for the Conservancy to raise the profile of, and visitation to, public conservation lands and waters in the Conservancy, which could, in turn, build public support for and contribution towards conservation.

The Department manages recreation opportunities as a suite of recreation destinations (icon destinations, gateway destinations, local treasures, backcountry). The Department intends to increase participation at the recreation destinations in Waikato Conservancy outlined in Appendix 12 (note: backcountry sites are not listed in Appendix 12). These destinations are managed within a wider recreation zoning framework (refer Map 3 in Volume II, and Appendix 13).

Future initiatives will encourage more people to use public conservation lands and waters by focusing on improving and developing existing facilities while providing an expanded range of well-promoted experiences. The Timber Trail in Pureora Forest Park is one such initiative.

Places where people participate in recreation include:

- The Icon Destination of Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, including Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).
- The Timber Trail Historic Icon Site in Pureora Forest Park, which is also envisaged to become an icon destination over the term of this CMS.
- The renowned tourist destination at Waitomo Caves, incorporating the Department-managed Ruakuri Gateway Destination within Ruakuri Scenic Reserve and Opapaka Pa Historic Reserve.

---

<sup>17</sup> Department of Conservation 2011: Department of Conservation National Survey of New Zealanders Report No. 5: Conservancy Comparison. Premium Research, Wellington.



- The following Gateway Destinations: the northern Coromandel Peninsula campsites; Kauaeranga Valley campsites and short walks; Kauaeranga Kauri Trail; Broken Hill campsites and tracks; Wentworth Valley campsite and falls track; Kaniwhaniwha Amenity Area in Pirongia Forest Park; and Kakaho campsite in Pureora Forest Park.
- Local treasures, which include walking tracks in Pirongia Forest Park; Wairēinga (Bridal Veil Falls) Track; Ngarunui (Bryant Memorial) Track at Raglan; Hakarimata Rail Trail; Waterworks Track; Waingaro link track; walking tracks on the Coromandel Peninsula; walking tracks highlighting the karst features in the Waitomo District; and walking tracks featuring biodiversity, logging and conservation protest themes in Pureora Forest Park.
- Backcountry sites, including overnight tramping opportunities in Coromandel, Pirongia and Pureora Forest Parks, and Whareorino Forest.
- Local treasure and backcountry sections of Te Araroa—the Long Pathway near Whangamarino Wetland, on the Hakarimata Range, and in Pirongia and Pureora Forest Parks.

To enable the continued provision of recreation facilities and opportunities, the Department will also draw on assistance from the community. Recreation opportunities and sites where the community will be encouraged to initiate or lead the provision and/or maintenance of recreation facilities include:

- Mountain biking and four-wheel driving opportunities on the Coromandel Peninsula and in Pureora Forest.
- Mountain biking opportunities in Pirongia Forest Park and at Waitomo.
- Biodiversity enhancement of recreation amenity areas.

## **OBJECTIVES**

- 1.5.3.1 Understand and respond to demand for particular types of recreation and other forms of participation when providing facilities and services.
- 1.5.3.2 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the icon and gateway destinations identified in Appendix 12 as the key attractions within the network of opportunities offered in the Conservancy.
- 1.5.3.3 Collaborate with the community to build support for the Conservancy's contribution to the best mix of recreation opportunities across New Zealand in a way that is consistent with the visitor management zones set out in Appendix 13 and Map 3 in Volume II.
- 1.5.3.4 Build partnerships with others to plan for, maintain and/or better develop locally treasured (Appendix 12) and backcountry recreation destinations.
- 1.5.3.5 Provide visitors with the opportunity for a positive social, physical and learning experience on public conservation lands.
- 1.5.3.6 Focus effort at sites that are accessible to major population centres, receive significant visitor numbers, or have the potential to leverage greater participation in recreation, conservation and regional tourism.
- 1.5.3.7 Provide facilities and services that respond to both the demand for emerging recreation activities and traditional forms of participation (e.g. tramping).

- 1.5.3.8 Enhance people’s understanding and appreciation of natural, historic and cultural heritage, particularly at icon and gateway destinations.
- 1.5.3.9 Work with regional tourism organisations, businesses and other agencies to improve and better coordinate information and marketing of recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters.
- 1.5.3.10 Avoid, minimise and otherwise manage conflicts between different users, including people undertaking different types of activities in the same location, in particular by:
  - a) providing guidance on appropriate shared-use etiquette;
  - b) using one-way direction of travel or specified single-use tracks; and
  - c) placing seasonal restrictions on some activities.
- 1.5.3.11 Integrate the improvement or expansion of existing campsites and overnight accommodation with the promotion and development of visitor destinations.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Waikato Conservancy recreation facility maintenance and development programmes have been developed.
- Ninety-five percent of people are satisfied with their recreation experience at icon and gateway destinations in Waikato Conservancy.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Report on the contribution that icon and gateway destinations are making towards increasing the number of people recreating on public conservation land has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Waikato Conservancy recreation facility maintenance and development programmes have been reviewed and revised.
- Ninety-five percent of people are satisfied with their recreation experience at icon and gateway destinations in Waikato Conservancy.
- Report on the contribution that icon, gateway, local treasure and backcountry destinations are making towards increasing the number of people recreating on public conservation land has been completed.

#### 1.5.4 More people engage with conservation and value its benefits

Waikato Conservancy already receives a large public contribution towards improving conservation and recreation outcomes, both on and off public conservation lands and waters. This includes pest control, tree planting, and walkway and cycleway development. The Waikato Biodiversity Forum, which is partly funded by the Department, provides advice and support to 160 community groups involved in biodiversity protection and enhancement. This active public involvement has resulted in significant conservation gains that would otherwise have been impossible for the Department to achieve alone.

A survey by the Waikato Biodiversity Forum revealed that the biggest challenge facing community groups is having enough volunteers to do the work, especially younger people<sup>18</sup>. Community groups working on conservation land tend to be in the 50+ age bracket, many of whom are retired and so have the time and inclination to undertake conservation projects, particularly in their local area. Facilitating more people to participate in conservation activity, especially in terms of choosing to support work in places where they do not live, will be a key challenge for the Department. There is little in the way of conservation land within urban environments and yet a high proportion of Waikato's population lives in urban communities—from Hamilton City to small towns across the Conservancy.

For conservation to really flourish within Waikato Conservancy, there must be a supportive environment where conservation is viewed as a legitimate and necessary activity that benefits everyone. Finding new and innovative ways to engage the community in conservation will be an ongoing task.

Waikato Conservancy recognises that there is a need to increase awareness of the value of conservation, particularly in those who have been identified as under-represented users of the conservation estate—namely youths (under 30s), Māori and families with children<sup>19</sup>. The Department must develop relationships and partnerships that help conservation, recreation and understanding of our history to new audiences, e.g. working with 'conservation champions' and recreation agencies that already have standing in the community. This will be achieved through the development of engagement programmes. Alongside this, the Department intends to continue to support active, community-led projects, such as community species protection programmes at Pureora, Pirongia and Coromandel Forest Parks, and lead and/or support volunteer programmes, such as the Coromandel Peninsula volunteer programme. Strategies to achieve this include identifying opportunities for partnerships and community-led projects; ensuring that conservation activities cater for a wide range of interests and aspirations; and trusting and supporting others to deliver quality conservation outcomes.

---

18 Cursey, M. 2011: Valuing community action on the ground: July 2009 to June 2010. Waikato Biodiversity Forum, Hamilton, New Zealand.

19 Department of Conservation 2008: Increasing the value of conservation to New Zealander's: a social marketing and awareness strategy for the Waikato Conservancy 2008–2013.

## OBJECTIVES

- 1.5.4.1 Increase understanding, technical skills and active support for conservation in Waikato Conservancy.
- 1.5.4.2 Seek opportunities that connect more people to the value of conservation.
- 1.5.4.3 Work with a range of partners (such as tangata whenua, local authorities, businesses, schools and the wider community) in enduring relationships to achieve ongoing conservation results.
- 1.5.4.4 Focus relationship building in those areas where cooperative relationships are most needed to support priority conservation outcomes, particularly those that:
  - a) are aligned with national priorities and people's leisure preferences;
  - b) add value and extend management to realise natural, cultural, historical and/or recreational benefits at the Places identified in Part Two of this CMS;
  - c) enhance and create ecological corridors and buffers for the protection of ecosystems, habitats and species;
  - d) develop support for and appreciation of marine protection areas;
  - e) support work to reach key audiences who are not currently engaged in conservation; and
  - f) recognise and protect sites and stories of special historical and cultural interest, including those at the Places identified in Part Two of this strategy.
- 1.5.4.5 Work with tangata whenua, communities, territorial authorities and other organisations to promote priority conservation messages, and to make linkages between the Department's work and the importance of healthy ecosystems for people's prosperity and well-being.
- 1.5.4.6 Identify and support partnerships that target key sectors of the community that are not well represented in conservation activities, focusing on young people, Māori and families with children.
- 1.5.4.7 Encourage public participation in the formulation and review of statutory planning documents for public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Waikato Conservancy, including for young people and Māori, has been completed.
- Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with partners in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.
- Report on tangata whenua and stakeholder satisfaction with engagement with Waikato Conservancy has been completed.
- Ninety-eight percent of people surveyed in Waikato Conservancy value conservation.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Waikato Conservancy, including for young people and Māori, has been completed.
- Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with partners in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.
- Report on tangata whenua and stakeholder satisfaction with engagement with Waikato Conservancy has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation have been reviewed and revised.
- Programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with partners in Waikato Conservancy have been reviewed and revised.
- Report on tangata whenua and stakeholder satisfaction with engagement with Waikato Conservancy has been completed.

#### **1.5.5 More business opportunities delivering increased economic prosperity and conservation gain**

The Department will seek to identify and promote new business opportunities and partnerships that deliver conservation gains while enhancing prosperity. The Conservancy has identified four key business sectors with which it will work to achieve greater conservation gains over the term of this CMS: farming, energy, forestry and tourism.

Waikato is a major centre for agriculture and technological innovation in New Zealand, and has a critical role to play in contributing to the national economy and improving economic performance.

Businesses are increasingly seeking to demonstrate how they can contribute to sustaining a healthy environment. The potential to engage in conservation partnerships increasingly makes sense for businesses, as it can significantly improve their worth, value and reputation while helping to conserve natural, historic and cultural heritage values.



Places for which the outcomes in Part Two—Places identify potential business opportunities include:

- Providing guided cycling, accommodation and transport for the Timber Trail in Pureora Forest Park.
- Working with the community to realise the conservation benefits from visits to karst country at Waitomo.
- Providing transport by boat to Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) and developing accommodation facilities on the island.
- Considering the feasibility of nature tourism visits to Cuvier Island (Repanga Island).
- Providing tourism facilities (with limits) at, or in the vicinity of, the car park to the Cathedral Cove walk.
- Providing multi-day ‘great walk’ style tramping/walking opportunities, including hut accommodation, in the Thames Coast to Broken Hills and Wharekirauponga areas on the Coromandel Peninsula.

## **OBJECTIVES**

- 1.5.5.1 Achieve recognition of the contribution that places within Waikato Conservancy make to the well-being and economic prosperity of the Waikato region and beyond.
- 1.5.5.2 Raise public awareness that intact functioning ecosystems underpin New Zealand’s economy both directly and indirectly.
- 1.5.5.3 Work with concessionaires to enhance the conservation experience of their customers and build support for conservation.
- 1.5.5.4 Work with regional tourism organisations, other promotional groups and businesses (particularly in the Coromandel, Waitomo and Pureora) to create and develop opportunities to promote conservation products and services.
- 1.5.5.5 Seek opportunities to work with businesses (particularly the farming, energy, tourism and forestry sectors) that are looking for ways to demonstrate their commitment to and engagement with conservation.
- 1.5.5.6 Work with relevant agencies to avoid duplication of regulatory controls on public conservation lands and waters.
- 1.5.5.7 Continue to work with relevant agencies to streamline and seek efficiencies in statutory processes.
- 1.5.5.8 Build productive business partnerships that deliver measurable conservation gains.
- 1.5.5.9 Increase engagement of the commercial sector in conservation.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the level of engagement and investment of the commercial sector in conservation partnerships in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.
- Report on the level of return on investment for key products and services (backcountry huts, conservation campsites, visitor centre network) provided by the Department in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Report on the level of engagement and investment of the commercial sector in conservation partnerships in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.
- Report on the level of return on investment for key products and services (backcountry huts, conservation campsites, visitor centre network) provided by the Department in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Report on the level of engagement and investment of the commercial sector in conservation partnerships in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.
- Report on the level of return on investment for key products and services (backcountry huts, conservation campsites, visitor centre network) provided by the Department in Waikato Conservancy has been completed.

## 1.6 The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato

The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato is the largest river in Waikato Conservancy. It is of great significance to iwi and has high conservation value. The river also flows through Tongariro/Whanganui/Taranaki Conservancy, with part of its northern catchment located in Auckland Conservancy and part of its eastern catchment located in East Coast Bay of Plenty Conservancy.

The Waikato River is the ancestral river (tūpuna awa), representing the mana and the mauri of the people. It is central to tribal identity, and to spiritual and physical well-being. For iwi, it is a living entity, encompassing its bed, banks and waters, streams, lakes, catchments and flood plains, flora and fauna, and metaphysical being. Iwi have a duty to past, present and future generations to protect the river.

The Waikato River has sustained tangata whenua for many generations as a place to live, a source for food and other resources, and a transport corridor. It represents a way of life, with much historical, spiritual and cultural significance to iwi and their mana.

The Waikato River has also shaped many wetland and river systems along its path, both past and present. The highly valued waterways and wetlands of the Hauraki Plains and lower Waikato basin are two examples. The Waikato River provides a range of habitats for native fauna and flora, supporting significant native fisheries and nationally threatened species.

The development and use of the Waikato River over time has led to degradation of its ecosystem and associated wetland systems. This has had significant impacts on native habitats, indigenous plants and animals, and cultural and spiritual values and the associated mana of iwi, including their ability to exercise kaitiakitanga and conduct their tikanga and kawa. Effective and productive partnerships with iwi are the key to restoring and managing the river's ecosystems, habitats and species, which the Department has a role in managing and advocating for.

Iwi within Waikato Conservancy that have a direct interest and special relationship with the Waikato River are Waikato-Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Tuwharetoa (collectively known as the Waikato River Iwi). Ngāti Maniapoto has a direct interest and special relationship with the Waipa River, which is a major tributary of the Waikato River.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 (the W-T RCS Act) gave effect to the 2009 Deed of Settlement for the Raupatu claims of Waikato-Tainui concerning the Waikato River. The Deed of Settlement established co-governance and co-management arrangements over the river, with an overarching purpose to restore and protect its health and well-being for future generations.

The Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 gave effect to deeds of settlement entered into between the Crown and those iwi. This Act sets out the establishment and participation of each iwi in co-management of the Waikato River, and has the same overarching purpose as the above Act.

The Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 (refer section 1.4) provides for co-governance and co-management between the Crown and Ngāti Maniapoto over the Upper Waipa River. This settlement is also linked to outcomes for the Waikato River under the above Treaty settlement legislation.

A primary component of the above Treaty settlement legislation is Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (Appendix 14):

*Tōku awa koiora me ōna pikonga he kura tangihia o te mātāmuri.  
The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last.*

*Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.*

The Vision and Strategy sets the management direction for the Waikato River and the Waipa River (refer Map 6). It is a statement of general policy and has the same status as a general policy in terms of the Conservation General Policy 2005, which this CMS implements and cannot be inconsistent with Appendix 14, which outlines the Vision and Strategy, demonstrates how this CMS implements the Department’s responsibilities to achieve the Vision and Strategy.

The W-T RCS Act also established the Waikato River Authority, which is a statutory body under both the W-T RCS Act and the Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010. The purpose of the Authority as set out in both Acts is to:

- Set the primary direction through the Vision and Strategy to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River for future generations.
- Promote an integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to the implementation of the Vision and Strategy and the management of the Waikato River.
- Fund rehabilitation initiatives for the Waikato River in its role as trustee for the Waikato River Clean-up Trust.

Other primary components of the above legislation are the integrated river management plan for the Waikato River and the Upper Waikato River integrated management plan. These plans set the framework for co-management of the Waikato River and their purpose as stated in legislation reads:

*To achieve an integrated approach between Waikato-Tainui/the Trusts that prepare the plan, relevant departments, relevant local authorities, and appropriate agencies to the management of aquatic life, habitats, and natural resources within the Waikato River consistent with the overarching purpose of the settlement.*

In addition, the Upper Waipa River integrated management plan under the Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 (refer section 1.4) is also linked to outcomes for the Waikato River. As noted in the introduction to this CMS, the conservation components of these plans have statuses as both conservation management plans and freshwater fisheries management plans under the Conservation Act 1987, and must be jointly approved by the relevant iwi Trusts and the Minister of Conservation.

Other mechanisms related to the Waikato River and Waipa River settlement legislation include iwi environmental plans<sup>20</sup>, which the Department has a statutory obligation to have regard to, and the specific mechanisms outlined below.

---

<sup>20</sup> At the time of writing this CMS, Ngāti Maniapoto had an operative environmental management plan (refer section 1.4), and Waikato-Tainui and Raukawa were in the process of preparing environmental plans.

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into a Conservation Accord with Waikato-Tainui on 20 October 2008. The Accord gives effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public (refer Area A on Map 6). The Accord is based on the following principles, the first three (in bold) being overriding principles:

- **Te Mana o Te Awa—The spiritual authority, protective power and prestige of the Waikato River**
- **Mana Whakahaere—Authority and rights of control**
- **Co-management**
- Health and well-being
- Integration
- Treaty of Waitangi
- Honour and integrity
- Conservation.

The Director-General of Conservation and Waikato-Tainui jointly signed the Conservation Accord Implementation Strategy (CAIS) on 17 June 2011. The CAIS was developed cooperatively, and sets out 17 objectives and 14 mechanisms for implementing the three overriding principles of Te Mana o Te Awa, Mana Whakahaere and Co-management.

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into Conservation Portfolio Accords both with Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi on 3 December 2010. As with the Waikato-Tainui Conservation Accord, these Accords also give effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public (refer Area B on Map 6).

As recorded in section 1.4, the Minister and Director-General of Conservation have entered into a Conservation Portfolio Accord with Ngāti Maniapoto in respect of the Waipa River and its catchments (refer Area C on Map 6).

At the time of writing this CMS, Ngāti Tuwharetoa had not sought to develop mechanisms with respect to the Department's responsibilities and Ngāti Tuwharetoa's interests in the Waikato River within Waikato Conservancy.

Note: The content of the Vision and Strategy, the Conservation (Portfolio) Accords and the CAIS are not open to submission or change through the review process for this CMS.



## OBJECTIVES

- 1.6.1 Implement the directions and outcomes in the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River where it applies to the Department under conservation legislation.
- 1.6.2 Work with Waikato River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto to achieve the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.
- 1.6.3 Recognise and work with Waikato River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto (where this applies) who have an interest in and a special relationship with the natural and historic resources, freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats of the Waikato River managed by the Department under conservation legislation.
- 1.6.4 Uphold and promote the principles of the Waikato-Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto Conservation (Portfolio) Accords in partnership with those iwi.
- 1.6.5 Work with Ngāti Tuwharetoa to achieve future settlement outcomes pertaining to natural and historic resources of the Waikato River managed by the Department under conservation legislation where it applies to Waikato Conservancy.
- 1.6.6 Work with Waikato-Tainui to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River for future generations through the objectives and mechanisms in the CAIS.
- 1.6.7 Ensure that all Department of Conservation staff in Waikato Conservancy who undertake work within the Accord Areas (Areas A, B and C) understand the Department's responsibilities in respect of the implementation of the Waikato-Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto Conservation (Portfolio) Accords.
- 1.6.8 Work cooperatively with all parties in regard to requests for the Department's participation on the Waikato River Authority.

## 1.7 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park was established by special legislation (the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act (HGMPA)) in February 2000 (refer Map 5). It covers an area of 1.2 million ha, and includes islands, and coastal and marine environments in Waikato and Auckland Conservancies. The Marine Park is an innovative concept in New Zealand that is akin to a national park of the sea, protecting important areas within a lived-in, worked-in environment. Its purpose is to:

- Recognise and protect in perpetuity the nationally and internationally significant natural and historic features and resources within the Marine Park.
- Protect in perpetuity and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of people, the natural and historic resources of the Marine Park.
- Recognise and have particular regard to the relationship of tangata whenua with the Gulf, its islands and coastal areas, and the natural and historic resources of the Marine Park.
- Protect and enhance the life-supporting capacity (soil, air, water and ecosystems) of the Gulf within the Marine Park.

The HGMPA provides for integrated management of the Gulf across 21 statutes, including the Conservation Act 1987, the Resource Management Act 1991 and the Fisheries Act 1996. The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park includes the following land within the Gulf, islands and coastal area:

- All conservation areas, wildlife refuges, wildlife sanctuaries, reserves, marine mammal sanctuaries and marine reserves held, managed or administered by the Department.
- Any reserve controlled or managed by an administering body under the Reserves Act 1977.
- All of the common marine and coastal area within the Gulf other than foreshore and seabed held for defence purposes.
- All seawater.
- The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention (refer section 2.4).

Local authorities can add their reserves, regional parks, or any other open space or building managed to protect its natural or historic values to the Marine Park, while retaining ownership and control. Protected private or Māori land can also be included at the owner's request. Mātaitai or taiāpure local fisheries may also be included.

The Gulf has a natural richness, environmental quality, biological diversity and landscape that make it outstanding and distinctive in New Zealand. The natural and historic features of the Marine Park are of national and international importance for their quality, and the presence of wildlife and plant species that are not found anywhere else in the world. The Marine Park also provides excellent recreation opportunities for residents and visitors.

There are seven marine reserves (one of which is found in Waikato Conservancy) and more than 50 islands in the Marine Park, and huge numbers of seabirds and 22 species of marine mammals have been observed within it. Examples of islands in the Marine Park within Waikato Conservancy are Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands, Motutapere Island and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) (refer section 2.1). Thanks to pest control and eradication programmes, an increasing number of islands in the Marine Park are mammalian pest-free sanctuaries, providing safe homes for many of New Zealand's rarest native species and an opportunity for visitors to connect with nature, and appreciate threatened species and the value of preserving and restoring island ecosystems.

There is growing recognition of the need to protect and enhance the unique values of the Marine Park, and to ensure that people have the opportunity to benefit from it and enjoy it now and in the future. Throughout the Marine Park, the Department, iwi, community trusts, agencies and organisations are working together to enhance its conservation values and to provide visitor opportunities.

Local authorities can add their reserves, regional parks, or any other open space or building managed to protect its natural or historic values to the Marine Park, while retaining ownership and control. Protected private or Māori land can also be included at the owner's request. Mātaitai or taiāpure local fisheries may also be included.

The HGMPA also established the Hauraki Gulf Forum. The key functions of the Forum are to integrate and promote the sustainable management of the Gulf, its islands and catchments, and to recognise the relationship that tangata whenua have with those areas. Forum members include representatives of all local authorities adjoining the Gulf or its catchments, and representatives of the Ministers of Conservation, Primary Industries and Māori Affairs, together with six tangata whenua representatives.

The Forum's vision for the Gulf is of a place that is 'celebrated and treasured', which is 'thriving with fish and shellfish, kaimoana', which has 'a rich diversity of life', and which supports a 'sense of place, connection and identity' and a 'vibrant economy'.

## OBJECTIVES

- 1.7.1 Implement sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 (which have the same effect as a statement of general policy by virtue of section 11 of the same Act), insofar as implementing the sections does not derogate from the provisions of the Conservation Act.
- 1.7.2 Enhance conservation values and visitor opportunities within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.
- 1.7.3 Support the Hauraki Gulf Forum to promote and improve integrated conservation management within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.
- 1.7.4 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other organisations and the community to:
  - a) raise the profile of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park and increase awareness of the special values;
  - b) identify potential opportunities to include new areas of land within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park;
  - c) advocate for giving effect to the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park through policies and plans; and
  - d) build partner support for the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park based on shared values.
- 1.7.5 Work with councils and other organisations to ensure that the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 is taken into account in statutory planning and decision-making processes.
- 1.7.6 Manage public conservation lands and waters within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park in accordance with outcomes and policies in Part Two—Places.
- 1.7.7 Provide information and interpretation, particularly at the Places in Part Two of this strategy, to enhance understanding and appreciation of the special values of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

# Part Two—Places

This section addresses Places in Waikato Conservancy (refer Map 7) that have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management (Conservation General Policy 2005) and which require some specific management direction. Each Place has a description, an outcome statement (outcome), policies and milestones:

- Outcome statements describe the future state of a Place, including its values and changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used when making decisions.
- Milestones are special events that are measurable steps towards achieving the outcome statement.

Part Two must be read in conjunction with Parts One and Three. Where the outcomes and policies in Part Two differ from the objectives in Part One, the provisions of Part Two prevail.

- 2.1 Hauraki Islands Place**
- 2.2 Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place**
- 2.3 Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place**
- 2.4 Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place**
- 2.5 Freshwater Wetlands Place**
- 2.6 Karioi to Whareorino Place**
- 2.7 Waitomo Place**
- 2.8 Pureora Place**

## 2.1 Hauraki Islands Place

The Hauraki Islands Place comprises all offshore and near-shore islands (except Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), which is included in the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place) that are administered by the Department within Waikato Conservancy (refer Maps 7.1 and 7.2). The islands included in this Place, their legal status and the Department's island classification<sup>21</sup> are listed in Table 1. Additional information about these islands is provided in Appendix 4, including their administrative status, 10-year management classification goal and the presence/absence of introduced mammals. These islands are also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 1.7).

Table 1 Islands within the Hauraki Islands Place and their 2011 island classification.

ISLAND	LEGAL STATUS	ISLAND CLASSIFICATION
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration
Motutapere Island	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary
Rabbit Island	Stewardship Area (Government Purpose Reserve)	Open Sanctuary
Whanganui Island (in part – marginal strip only)	Conservation Area (Marginal Strip)	Not classified
<b>Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua):</b>		
Hongiora Island	Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact
Nga Horo, Ruamahuaiti, Ruamahuanui and Middle Islands	Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery
<b>Mercury Islands:</b>		
Green and Atiu or Middle Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact
Red Mercury (Whakau) and Korapuki Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery
Double (Moturehu) and Kawhitu or Stanley Islands	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery

### Description

The Hauraki Islands are significant sites for ecological restoration and threatened species conservation. Many have a history of human settlement and use, and restricted but increasing recreation opportunities. The islands can be divided into three groups:

- (1) Island nature reserves and wildlife sanctuaries where public access is restricted and highly controlled to protect high-priority natural values and to enable ecological restoration (the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)).
- (2) Islands where ecological restoration is the priority but opportunities are available for limited and controlled public access (Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)).
- (3) Islands where public access is unrestricted and there is potential for increased recreation opportunities (Motutapere, Rabbit and Whanganui (in part) Islands).

<sup>21</sup> As defined in: Department of Conservation 2010: *The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation*. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.



Many of the Hauraki Islands are important sites for maintaining New Zealand's biological heritage and diversity. They are significant refuges for threatened species that were once widespread on mainland New Zealand, and several also support endemic species that are unique to those islands. They are also important sites for ecological restoration, as most of the islands have been modified by human activities. Several, however, remain largely undisturbed, and have intact and functioning ecosystems.

All islands within this Place (apart from Whanganui and Rabbit Islands) are free of introduced mammals. The Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) have been identified as priority ecosystem sites by the Department, primarily because of the species diversity they support. The Mercury Islands and Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) represent the most ecologically intact islands. Atiu or Middle and Green Islands in the Mercury Island group have never been impacted by introduced mammals. Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), while relatively intact ecologically, has been subject to extensive human impacts, including farming, cultivation and long-term habitation.

Collectively, Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) support some of the greatest diversity of reptiles and seabirds found in New Zealand. Motutapere Island, while extensively modified, is almost completely covered in regenerating forest. Rabbit and Whanganui Islands are the most modified islands within this Place.

The Hauraki Islands provide a dramatic landscape that is visible from the Coromandel Peninsula coastline. Known as continental or land-bridge islands, these islands were connected to the mainland during periods of lower sea level, and most contain important geological features. Many of the islands have a history of seasonal or long-term human use and settlement. They are also important for scientific research, which is often focused on informing or improving conservation management.

Hauraki Whānui have a strong relationship with ngā motu (islands), which they have used for many purposes, including as safe havens and for burials. Islands also have been, and continue to be, a source of mahinga kai (resources).

Not all of the Hauraki Islands are open for public access and use, and so recreation opportunities are limited. The Department has identified Rabbit and Motutapere Islands and public conservation land on Whanganui Island as sites that can accommodate recreation activity, as they are open for public access. Rabbit and Motutapere Islands also have the potential for increased community involvement in island restoration and species recovery, which may help improve awareness and appreciation of conservation issues in New Zealand.

Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) are accessible to the public by permit only because their gazetted status as nature reserves and wildlife sanctuaries legally limits access. The Department manages these islands for the protection of high biodiversity values, which, due to their fragile environments or vulnerable biota, can only be appreciated from a distance by the public. Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) is an exception to this, as the Department considers that it could host low-impact and controlled nature tourism. Activities such as filming and off-site interpretation may help to enhance public appreciation of those Hauraki Islands that are inaccessible to the public.

The Hauraki Islands are generally accessed by watercraft. Limited aircraft access is also possible to Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Rabbit Island, Motutapere Island and Whanganui Island. Aircraft landings are not appropriate on the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) due to their fragile ecosystems and the disturbance caused by aircraft.

Keeping the islands free of introduced plant and animal pests is of paramount importance for managing and protecting the significant biodiversity values present. Other important management issues include fire (the Hauraki Islands have high fire risk due to weather patterns (frequent windy conditions), vegetation types and their isolation), demand for research, access, balancing the protection of biodiversity and historic and cultural heritage values, and cooperative management of mahinga kai (resources).

The Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006)<sup>22</sup> specifies the biosecurity processes for managing the risk of pest invasion on the Hauraki Islands, with the exception of public conservation land on Whanganui Island. The plan sets out risk assessment processes and standards for island visits and pest incursion management.

### ***Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)***

Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) and its 13 associated rock stacks is the oldest and most isolated island in this Place. Free of introduced mammals since 1993, regenerating forest covers approximately 125 ha (66%) of the island. Northern tuatara, five species of lizard and about 20 bird species are found here, including tīeke/North Island saddleback (*Philesturnus carunculatus*), Pycroft's petrel (*Pterodroma pycrofti*) and several species that are no longer found on the mainland. The island is an important site for threatened species conservation. Archaeological evidence suggests intermittent pre-European occupation dating back to early journeys to and from Hawaiki. European history of the island is centred on the building and staffing of a lighthouse and later a World War II radar station. Several buildings and relics associated with this period of occupation are maintained by the Department for their historic value. The lighthouse is operational and fully automated. Any nature tourism activity on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) should be tightly controlled and complement restoration of the ecosystem and protection of historic sites and cultural values.

### ***Mercury Islands***

The Mercury Islands have largely intact ecosystems, and support unique and important threatened wildlife and flora. Threatened and at risk species present include northern tuatara, Whitaker's skink (*Cyclodina whitakeri*), Suter's skink (*Oligosoma suteri*), robust skink (*Cyclodina alani*), Duvaucel's gecko (*Hoplodactylus duvaucelii*) and pāpā/Pacific gecko (*Hoplodactylus pacificus*); Mercury Islands tusked wētā (*Motuweta isolata*); pukupuku/little spotted kiwi (*Apteryx owenii*); tara/white-fronted tern (*Sterna striata*); tīeke/North Island saddleback; and several species of seabird.

Atiu or Middle Island in particular has a high density of burrowing seabirds, northern tuatara, the Mercury Islands tusked wētā, ten species of lizards and a rare milk tree (*Streblus banksii*) forest.

Green Island and Atiu or Middle Island contain intact ecosystems that are extremely fragile due to the geology and density of seabird burrows, and thus are vulnerable to disturbance. Translocations between islands within this group have increased the security of some threatened species. Archaeological evidence suggests that these islands were a significant population centre for Māori until approximately 1820.

### ***Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)***

The Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) are home to approximately 100 different species of plants, including several threatened species. They also support significant populations of oi/grey-faced petrel (northern muttonbird, *Pterodroma macroptera gouldi*), white-

---

<sup>22</sup> Department of Conservation 2006: Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan. Hauraki Area Office, Department of Conservation, Thames, New Zealand (unpublished). 57 p.

faced petrel (*Pelagodroma marina*) and northern tuatara. Of all the islands in this group, Hongiora has the most fragile ecosystem.

Archaeological evidence suggests only seasonal occupation by Māori, probably coinciding with the petrel breeding season and seasonal fishing opportunities. The Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) are of particular significance to Hauraki Whānui (Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Hako and Marutūahu), who gifted the islands to the Crown in 1969<sup>23</sup>. The original owners continue their traditional harvest of grey-faced petrels alongside monitoring and independent research. These populations are managed by the Department in partnership with Hauraki Whānui. It is a priority to ensure that the cultural harvest is ecologically sustainable.

## Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hauraki Islands Place

### OUTCOME

The diverse and fragile ecosystems and habitats of the Hauraki islands are healthy and functioning, and sustain viable populations of indigenous flora and fauna. All islands, with the exception of Whanganui Island, are free of introduced mammals. The natural character and unmodified landscapes of the Hauraki islands remain intact.

The Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) are treasured, significant 'ecological lifeboats'. These islands are valued for their ecosystem integrity, the richness and diversity of fauna and flora, and their contribution to biodiversity conservation. They provide security for threatened species, are important sites for the reintroduction of ecologically appropriate threatened species, and support threatened species recovery programmes by acting as source sites for translocations to other locations.

The harvest of grey-faced petrel populations on the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) is ecologically sustainable and managed in collaboration with Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Hako and Marutūahu.

A small number of adventurous people enjoy controlled, low-impact nature tourism opportunities on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), which complement the island's biodiversity and historic heritage. Aircraft activity on the island is low, and aircraft and watercraft are used to access the island.

Scientific research continues to increase our understanding of island ecosystems and threatened species conservation, but is only permitted where the benefits of learning outweigh any impacts or risks to the islands' ecosystems and species.

All visitors maintain island biosecurity and respect the sites they visit.

Cultural and historic heritage, including sites and stories of the Hauraki Islands of importance to Hauraki Whānui, is protected and enhanced. Hauraki Whānui are interested and involved in island management.

The restoration and maintenance of heritage values associated with the lighthouse settlement and World War II radar station on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) is consistent with biodiversity values on the island.

The public enjoy island recreation experiences on Motutapere and Rabbit Islands, and the north western coast of Whanganui Island. Visitors to these islands also enjoy small-scale camping opportunities with basic facilities and short walks, and expect to only occasionally encounter aircraft activity. The community assists with ecosystem restoration programmes on Motutapere and Rabbit Islands.

<sup>23</sup> Under the Reserves and Other Lands Disposal Act 1970 (s6), the Aldermen Islands are recorded as being gifted to the Crown for inclusion in the Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park on 12 August 1969.

## **POLICIES**

- 2.1.1 Develop restoration plans for the Mercury Islands and Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua).
- 2.1.2 Assess and identify areas where nature tourism activities, including public accommodation facilities, can occur on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), in a way that is consistent with:
  - a) the outcome and policies for this Place;
  - b) the island's land status;
  - c) the island's classification and the Department's Island Strategy (2010)<sup>24</sup>, or any subsequent strategy;
  - d) the Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan<sup>25</sup>; and
  - e) the management and protection of heritage and cultural values.
- 2.1.3 Manage island biosecurity in accordance with the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006).
- 2.1.4 Continue to support the research of ecologically sustainable tītī/ grey-faced petrel harvest on the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), and manage the harvest in partnership with Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Hako and Marutūahu according to those research findings.
- 2.1.5 Promote public access and recreation opportunities on Rabbit, Motutapere and Whanganui Islands.
- 2.1.6 Work cooperatively with Maritime New Zealand in their management of the Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse.
- 2.1.7 Increase public understanding and appreciation of the Hauraki islands, particularly the Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), without the need to visit the islands; for example, by providing interpretation about island conservation on islands that are accessible to the public.
- 2.1.8 Consider access to the Hauraki Islands for scientific and educational research on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the following criteria:
  - a) the research is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;
  - b) the research is consistent with the land status of the island on which the research is proposed to occur;
  - c) the research meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006);
  - d) the research is consistent with the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification of the island on which the research is proposed to occur;

<sup>24</sup> Department of Conservation 2010: The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.

<sup>25</sup> Department of Conservation 2010: Repenga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan: 2010–2020. Waikato Conservancy, Department of Conservation, Hamilton, New Zealand.

- e) in the case of the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua):
    - (i) the research cannot be undertaken on another island;
    - (ii) the number of visits to islands classified as ‘minimum impact’, i.e. Hongiora Island (Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)), and Green and Atiu or Middle Islands (Mercury Islands), is minimised to protect fragile ecological values;
  - f) benefits of the research to island ecosystems and species conservation outweigh any adverse effects; and
  - g) where there are more requests for permission to carry out research than an island can sustain, applications will be prioritised according to their contribution to island ecosystem and species conservation.
- 2.1.9 Should not allow general public access or commercial activities on the Mercury Islands, the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), except as provided by Policies 2.1.10 and 2.1.13 to 2.1.15 for this Place.
- 2.1.10 May allow filming in this Place, in accordance with Policies 3.15.1 to 3.15.3 in Part Three and provided that:
- a) the activity benefits and promotes the understanding of island conservation or supports an authorised activity;
  - b) the activity is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;
  - c) the activity is consistent with the land status of the island on which the activity is proposed to occur;
  - d) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006); and
  - e) the activity is consistent with the Department’s Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification of the island on which the activity is proposed to occur.
- 2.1.11 Provide support and advice to Hauraki Whānui about island restoration and management to facilitate restoration of islands under their ownership and management, including Motukoruenga and Motukoranga Islands.
- 2.1.12 Should not allow or build new structures on the Mercury Islands or the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), except where structures are necessary to support island conservation management, and provided that:
- a) structures are temporary and minimised in number and size;
  - b) any impacts on island ecosystems and species is avoided or minimised;
  - c) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006); and
  - d) the activity is consistent with the island’s classification and the Department’s Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy.
- 2.1.13 May allow new structures on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) only in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three and provided that:
- a) it is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;

- b) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006);
  - c) preference is given to the re-use of existing buildings over the construction of new structures; and
  - d) the heritage value of existing buildings is not adversely affected.
- 2.1.14 May allow limited guided nature tourism on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) only in accordance with the following criteria, to protect high biodiversity values:
- a) the activity is directly related to the appreciation of conservation values of the island;
  - b) the activity contributes to island restoration and conservation activities on the island;
  - c) the activity is consistent with the Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan and the preservation of heritage sites and values on the island;
  - d) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006);
  - e) the activity is consistent with the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification of Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) (ecosystem restoration); and
  - f) the following limits are met:
    - (i) a maximum of 40 people visit the island per day (including overnight stays);
    - (ii) access by watercraft is for a maximum of 50 trips<sup>26</sup> per year, with no more than one boat visiting the island per day;
    - (iii) access by aircraft is in accordance with Policy 2.1.15 for this Place.
- 2.1.15 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on Cuvier (Repanga), Motutapere and Rabbit Islands, and public conservation land on Whanganui Island shown as Orange Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2 and 3.5.5 to 3.5.7 in Part Three, and the following criteria, to protect biodiversity values and the recreation setting:
- a) no more than two landings per day per island, and a maximum of 50 landings in any year per island;
  - b) landings and take-offs only occur on the designated helipad or landing site;
  - c) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006); and
  - d) over-flying of forest areas is discouraged.
- 2.1.16 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs on the Mercury Islands or the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), shown as Red Zone on Map 4, to protect significant biodiversity values and fragile ecosystems, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three.

<sup>26</sup> A trip equals one drop-off and/or pick-up from the island.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem site work programmes for the Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) priority ecosystem sites has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway on the Hauraki Islands has been completed.
- The Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) restoration plan has been completed inline with priority ecosystem site work programmes.
- An assessment identifying where nature tourism activities can occur on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- The Mercury Islands restoration plan has been prepared inline with priority ecosystem site work programmes.
- Review of the Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan has been completed inline with priority ecosystem site work programmes.
- Heritage site assessments have been completed and site-based maintenance plans for heritage sites have been developed on islands with visitor access.
- Report on progress made by the community in the restoration of Motutapere and Rabbit Islands has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Review of the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) Restoration Plan has been completed inline with priority ecosystem site work programmes.
- Visible progress has been made by the community in the restoration of Motutapere and Rabbit Islands.



## 2.2 Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place

The Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place comprises all public conservation land from the northern tip of the Coromandel Peninsula to (but not including) the Karangahake Gorge (refer Maps 7.3 and 7.4). The Department administers 38% of the total land area on the Coromandel Peninsula, including the 72 000-ha Coromandel Forest Park. Management of the land has a direct influence on the environment and opportunities available to those who live and visit the Peninsula. The policy direction for this Place focuses on lands managed by the Department, and integrated management of values and pressures originating off public conservation lands, particularly with respect to coastal development, and the protection of biodiversity values, outstanding natural landscapes and natural character.

This Place includes three discrete areas, each with specific management needs:

- Northern Coromandel
- Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills
- Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekirauponga.

### Description

The Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place contains a large forest continuum with rare coastal forests, and is valued for its diverse native flora and fauna, scenic natural landscapes, rich history, ecosystem services, and wide range of recreation and tourism opportunities.

This Place is characterised by indigenous forest, wetlands, and ecologically diverse coastal and marine ecosystems. Indigenous forests cover a large part of the Peninsula and include almost contiguous tracts of mixed broadleaf/podocarp forest along the main Coromandel Range (east-west and north-south). Remnant kauri, coastal pōhutukawa forest, and mānuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*) and kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides*) scrubland feature in many areas. Coastal pōhutukawa forest is present along the coastline, including at northern Coromandel, Waiomu Ecological Area, Onemana, Whiritoa and the Thames Coast. Priority forest ecosystem sites identified by the Department are found at Moehau, Papa Aroha, Horseshoe Bay, Whenuakite, Kapowai-Kauaeranga, Papakai and Otahu. Priority coastal dune ecosystems feature at many locations along the coast, including Waikawau Beach (Northern Coromandel) and Otama, and other important dune ecosystems occur at Port Jackson and Opoutere. The maintenance of ecological integrity and habitat connectivity, particularly in forest habitat, is a management priority for the Department.

The Coromandel Forest Park contains numerous waterways that feed into, and have a significant influence on, the quality of the many wetland and coastal-marine habitats. Coastal-marine areas are part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 1.7). Significant among these are Manaia Harbour, Cape Colville, the Fantail Bay coastline, Waikawau Estuary, Whitianga, Whangapoua and Wharekawa Harbours, upper Coromandel, Tairua and Whangamata Harbours, and Opito Bay. These ecosystems have significant ecological value and natural character, and their ecological health is linked strongly to the Coromandel Peninsula land mass, which includes large areas of public conservation land. Development pressure on coastal ecosystems and natural character is a significant issue on the Peninsula.

Ecosystems across the Coromandel Peninsula support a great diversity of flora and fauna, including many endemic and threatened species. They support invertebrates, bats, birds and lizards, and provide important habitat for native frogs. They also sustain locally endemic reptile and invertebrate species, including, for example, the threatened Coromandel striped gecko (*Hoplodactylus stephenis* var. *coromandel*) and Moehau stag beetle. The threatened Coromandel brown kiwi is found across many forest and shrubland

areas on the Peninsula, which is one of five strongholds for brown kiwi in New Zealand. Coastal ecosystems are important for many shorebird and wading bird species that breed and feed along the coast, including approximately 60% of the tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel population. Wetlands provide habitat for important birdlife, including the threatened pāteke/brown teal and matuku/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), and the at risk mātātā/North Island fernbird (*Bowdleria punctata*). Streams provide habitat for a diverse native fish fauna, including the threatened shortjaw kōkopu (*Galaxias postvectis*) and tuna/longfin eel (*Anguilla dieffenbachia*).

A wide range of threats are present, including introduced mammalian predators and herbivores, such as goats, pigs, possums, rats (*Rattus* spp.) and stoats (*Mustela erminea*). Wild deer are currently absent from the Peninsula and the Department intends to keep the Peninsula free from wild deer. Threat management focuses on priority forest and coastal ecosystems, protection of threatened and at risk flora and fauna, and flood mitigation. Community projects assist the Department with protecting threatened species, such as pāteke/brown teal and Coromandel brown kiwi, and with ecosystem restoration. Hunters also contribute to goat and pig control, and commercial trappers contribute to possum control. The Department coordinates hunters and wild animal control efforts to target the protection priority areas and values.

Diseases present a threat at this Place. As at the end of 2012, kauri dieback disease (*Phytophthora taxon Agathis*, or PTA) was not known to be present on the Coromandel Peninsula, but it is a potential threat to remnant kauri forests. The amphibian chytrid fungus (*Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis*) is present in the Archey's frog population. These threats are managed on a site-by-site basis, and the Department is reliant on other agencies, interested parties and the community for assistance with threat management due to the large land area it manages.

The indigenous forests along the Coromandel Range provide water and soil conservation, and are important carbon sinks and sources for domestic water supply. They retain runoff during high-intensity rain events, reducing downstream flooding, and contribute to reduced sedimentation and increased water quality in the Peninsula's harbours and estuaries.

The landscape comprises landforms and geological features that are diverse and aesthetically attractive. A complex andesitic and rhyolitic geology formed the Moehau Range and main Coromandel Range. The Peninsula is also rich in gold-bearing quartz. Many significant geopreservation sites are found on the Peninsula, such as the Sugar Loaf Volcanic Sequence at Fletcher Bay. Impressive landmarks include Table Mountain, Castle Rock (Motutere) and the Maumaupaki (Camels Back). The main Coromandel Range is a distinctive landscape feature with high natural character.

Over 3000 pre-European historic sites and 700 post-European settlement historic sites have been recorded on the Peninsula. Historic sites include those associated with kauri logging, gold mining, early European occupation and some of the earliest known pre-European settlements. Twenty significant historic sites on the Peninsula are managed by the Department, including kauri dams, coastal pā and gold-mining sites (Appendix 11). Some sites present safety issues and risks for visitors, and are managed according to those risks.

The Coromandel Peninsula has a long history of mining activities, particularly gold mining. Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, mineral permit holders can only apply for access arrangements from the Minister of Conservation to enter public conservation land south of the Kopu-Hikuai Road (State Highway 25A), excluding Otahu Ecological Area.

The Coromandel Peninsula is of great physical and spiritual significance to tangata whenua. Hauraki Whānui have strong connections with the Peninsula's coast, mountains and rivers. The Peninsula is described as 'Te Tara o Te Whai' (the jagged barb of the

stingray). The Moehau and Coromandel Ranges are described as a great waka or figurative ama (outrigger), with its prow at Mt Te Aroha and stern at Mt Moehau.

Recreation opportunities include short, day and multi-day walks, camping, swimming, picnicking, fishing, mountain biking, horse riding, and four-wheel driving/trail bike riding. Hunting is available on a permit-only basis. Many opportunities are easily accessible because of their proximity to settlements and state highways. Visitor facilities include a mosaic of forest and coastal tracks, two public huts, and 19 campsites. The scenic landscape, history and natural values of the Peninsula are integral parts of the visitor experience.

Recreation opportunities are in high demand, and many sites and facilities that are managed by the Department are extremely popular, particularly in Northern Coromandel and the Kauaeranga Valley. The Department manages seven gateway destinations in the Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place (Appendix 12). Particular focus will occur at these gateway destinations, while the next priorities will be other recreation destinations in Northern Coromandel, and many of the Peninsula's popular scenic short walks, campsites, and peaceful backcountry and coastal settings. The Department is also looking at providing opportunities for freedom camping on public conservation land on the Peninsula.

Opportunities exist for external parties to provide and complement the Department's visitor services on public conservation land, particularly where the Department is unable to keep up with demand. The Department intends to cater for recreation opportunities, particularly those in short supply such as horse riding and mountain biking, by diversifying opportunities on existing track networks, and seeking assistance from the private sector and the community to create and maintain such opportunities. This could also include considering the closure of low-use tracks, or seeking community-led maintenance of those tracks, to enable opportunities to be provided elsewhere on the Peninsula. Any new recreation opportunities would need to satisfy the Department's standards for tracks and other facilities.

The Department manages concessions for a wide range of activities and public services on the Peninsula, including water supply, livestock grazing, network utilities, guiding, and other services supporting recreational users and tourists. A number of high-profile annual multi-sport events are also held on the Peninsula. Maintaining the natural and heritage values and the experiences these activities rely on is a key management priority. The Department's intention is to facilitate opportunities where this is consistent with natural, heritage and recreational values.

There is high interest and involvement by the community in biodiversity protection and restoration. Many groups contribute to conservation outcomes through community-led restoration projects at numerous locations, including Northern and Eastern Coromandel and the Thames Coast. The Department is a signatory to the Coromandel Blueprint Project—a collaboration with iwi and territorial local authorities that facilitates integrated planning and management on the Peninsula.

Management challenges include reconciling the legal status of public conservation land parcels to reflect conservation values; unauthorised structures, tracks and encroachment on public conservation land; and unauthorised motorised vehicle use.

## ***Northern Coromandel***

Northern Coromandel has a range of ecosystem types, including estuaries, wetlands, beach and dune systems, kānuka-mānuka shrubland, coastal pōhutukawa forest, and lowland to montane podocarp forest. An unbroken altitudinal forest sequence from coastal to subalpine vegetation encompasses much of Moehau.

Moehau and Waikawau Bay are priority ecosystem sites for the Department. Moehau supports many threatened species and is a hotspot for plant diversity, while Waikawau Bay includes estuary, beach and sensitive dune ecosystems. Intensive threat management is focused at these sites and some work has commenced to restore the dune ecosystem. Community-based management contributes to predator control and wetland restoration at Waikawau Beach and other locations.

These ecosystems host an array of threatened and at risk fauna and flora. Forests support species such as North Island kākā, tītītipounamu/rifleman (*Acanthisitta chloris*), Archey's frog, Hochstetter's frog, Coromandel striped gecko and the endemic Moehau stag beetle. Coromandel brown kiwi are protected over a large area, including in the Department's Moehau Kiwi Sanctuary and several community-managed kiwi zones. The at risk orchid *Prasophyllum hectori*, *Pittosporum virgatum* and 14 other locally rare plant species are present on Moehau. Threatened and at risk coastal and wetland bird species include tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, pohowera/banded dotterel (*Charadrius bicinctus*), taranui/Caspian tern (*Sterna caspia*), mohopereru/banded rail (*Rallus philippensis*) and matuku/Australasian bittern. Estuarine and wetland habitats are also a stronghold for the threatened pāteke/brown teal—the largest population in the Waikato—and the brown teal louse (*Anaticola* sp.).

The Northern Coromandel landscape is scenic and characterised by volcanic landforms, bush-covered ridgelines, and a lack of intrusion by rural and urban development. The Moehau Range is an outstanding natural landscape, and the coastline from south of Port Jackson to Waikawau Bay contains highly valued coastal landscapes and seascapes. The recreation reserves from Fantail Bay to Waikawau Bay complete the continuum of protected forest and undeveloped scenery from mountain to sea. These reserves were purchased by the government in the 1970s to protect the area from coastal development, and to retain landscape and scenic values, and provide camping opportunities in places free from intensive development. Areas of farmland within these reserves are managed under licence to protect scenic, natural, cultural and recreational values. The Department intends to progressively retire land from grazing, while retaining a connection with the farming history of the area, and increase recreation infrastructure within these recreation reserves.

Northern Coromandel has an important cultural heritage landscape and, along with Mt Moehau, is of great significance to Hauraki Whānui. The coastline surrounding Moehau contains evidence of almost continuous Māori occupation that extends back to approximately 1250–1300 AD, when the first Polynesian migrants are thought to have arrived in the area<sup>27</sup>. Relics of European occupation are also present.

Recreation opportunities are based on the coastal setting and remoteness from population centres. Tracks include the Coromandel Walkway and the Muriwai Walk. A large proportion of visitors are overnight campers, with the traditional 'kiwi family' camping experience available at Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay, Fantail Bay, Fletcher Bay and Port Jackson. Waikawau Bay is the largest campsite in the country and very popular during summer holidays (35 000 people visit each year). There is high demand for camping and walking opportunities close to and along the coast.

---

<sup>27</sup> Monin, P. 2012: Hauraki–Coromandel region. Te Ara—the Encyclopaedia of New Zealand. Updated 17 May 2012. [www.teara.govt.nz/en/hauraki-coromandel-region](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/hauraki-coromandel-region)

The Department's recreation focus for Northern Coromandel is to provide facilities that enhance coastal walking and traditional 'kiwi family' camping opportunities. This will centre on the Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay and Fletcher Bay Gateway Destinations, and will include additional camping opportunities and a multi-day coastal walking and cycling experience from Fletcher Bay to Sandy Bay. High visitation provides an opportunity to increase conservation awareness. Integration of ecological principles with farming operations within the coastal recreation reserves is a long-term goal to enhance landscape and natural values. This will involve ecological restoration, including retiring land from grazing and replanting native vegetation, and enabling more recreation opportunities, as outlined above.

### ***Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills***

The Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills area contains coastal pōhutukawa, kauri, tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*) and podocarp forests, within lowland and montane bioclimatic zones. Threatened and at risk species include the dwarf greenhood orchid (*Pterostylis micromega*), *Dactylanthus taylorii*, the endemic Coromandel mountain daisy, Archey's frog, kāeaea/New Zealand falcon and remnant populations of Coromandel brown kiwi. Shorebirds breed along the Thames Coast. Priority ecosystem sites are Kapowai-Kauaeranga (the Kapowai Ecological Area and upper reaches of the Kauaeranga Valley) and Papakai Ecological Area. The intact forest catchments also provide important habitat for native fish. The Table Mountain andesite plateau and The Pinnacles are major landmarks of the Coromandel Range.

Along the Thames Coast, integrated flood protection, river catchment management and animal threat management improves soil and water values to reduce flood risks for coastal communities. This also benefits biodiversity and helps reduce sedimentation in the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana. Kauri protection and kauri dieback disease advocacy is important along the Thames Coast. An active community contributes to threat management, including protection for Coromandel brown kiwi and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel.

This area has a diverse logging and mining history, with much of the area having been extensively logged for kauri. Within the Kauaeranga Valley, there are numerous sites associated with kauri logging, including tramlines and several historically significant kauri dams at Christmas Creek and Dancing Creek. Gold-mining history features at Broken Hills, the site of the historic gold-mining settlement of Puketui. Heritage values along the Thames Coast include sites associated with logging, mining and colonial farm settlement.

The Kauaeranga River is known to Māori as Waiwhakaurunga. The Waiwhakaurunga headwater catchment is the primary source for the Kauaeranga River. There is potential for the Department and Hauraki Whānui to manage and interpret cultural values in partnership, particularly in the Kauaeranga Valley.

This area has the most extensive and accessible track network on the Peninsula. It offers a multitude of recreation opportunities, including numerous campsites and two public huts—Crosbies Hut and Pinnacles Hut, the latter being the largest Department of Conservation managed hut in the country. Recreation opportunities allow appreciation of natural values and kauri logging history in the Kauaeranga Valley, and gold-mining history in Broken Hills. The Kauaeranga Valley, Kauaeranga Kauri Trail and the Broken Hills area are Gateway Destinations that attract 150 000, 27 000 and 14 000 visitors each year, respectively.

The Department's Kauaeranga Visitor Centre has an important information and interpretation function, and is a key link between the public and the Department, with 47 000 people visiting each year. A strong environmental education focus in the

Kauaeranga Valley is enhanced by the Visitor Centre and three education camps managed under concession.

There is potential to develop a 2- to 4-day tramp from the Thames Coast through the Kauaeranga Valley to Broken Hills if a third hut is developed between the Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills. Other potential opportunities include shared mountain biking and walking tracks, and provision for public accommodation (other than camping) in the Kauaeranga Valley. Assistance from the community, user groups and the private sector could help realise these opportunities.

### ***Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga***

The moderately steep to rolling hill country of the Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga Valley is covered with lowland to montane forest and scrub, and kauri forest. It provides a forest corridor between central Coromandel and the Kaimai Range, maintaining soil and water quality, and protecting the catchment draining to east coast harbours, including Wharekawa, Otahu and Whangamata Harbours. Goats have been controlled since 1983 and the understorey is relatively intact; however, possums severely affect canopy condition.

Threatened species present include Archey's frog, peketua/Hochstetter's frog, Coromandel brown kiwi, North Island kākā, kārearea/New Zealand falcon, pekapeka/long-tailed bat and tuna/longfin eel. The Otahu Ecological Area has been identified as a priority ecosystem site by the Department. Assistance with animal pest management could result in significant improvement in forest health and help to secure threatened species that are present in the area. In addition to these ecological values, significant andesitic formations are found in Parakawai Geological Area in the eastern Wharekairauponga catchment.

Historic values centre on kauri logging, gold mining and early telegraph communication. Kauri logging and mining sites feature throughout the Wentworth, Maratoto and Wharekairauponga. Examples include the actively managed Royal Standard Tramway at Wharekairauponga, and mining sites between Maratoto and Golden Cross. The Wires Track at Maratoto follows a historic telegraph route. The protection of significant historical features in this area is a priority and, where it is safe for visitors, their integration with recreation experiences will be important goals.

Recreation opportunities include camping, tramping, visiting historic mining and logging sites, picnicking and hunting. Four-wheel driving, horse riding, and trail bike and mountain bike tracks are available in the Maratoto area, but are currently limited elsewhere on the Peninsula. The track network links the Wentworth Valley to Maratoto and also Maratoto to Golden Cross. The popular Wentworth campsite offers a traditional camping experience and is managed under concession. It receives 13 500 visitors annually and, along with the Wentworth Falls Walk, is managed as a Gateway Destination. Other recreation opportunities, such as mountain biking in exotic forest south of Whangamata and the Hauraki Rail Trail, complement those available in this area. Management issues are associated with four-wheel drive vehicle use, and include balancing use by motorised and non-motorised vehicles and other users, and formalising management of an unauthorised campsite in the upper Maratoto Valley/Tairau River catchment.

Recreation priorities include development of the gateway destination sites, continued provision of opportunities associated with historic and natural values of the area, and maintaining four-wheel drive vehicle, mountain bike and horse riding opportunities that are limited elsewhere on the Peninsula. There is significant potential for the creation of a 'Great Walk' style multi-day tramp linking the Wharekairauponga and Wentworth tracks. Assistance from the community and the private sector would help realise this opportunity.



## Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place

### OUTCOME

The Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place is recognised and valued for its biodiversity, scenic landscapes and rich heritage, and contributes to the well-being of local communities.

Priority forest, coastal and wetland ecosystems on the Peninsula are restored to a healthy functioning state. Populations of threatened and at risk species are thriving. Locally treasured ecosystems are protected, and indigenous flora and fauna are becoming more abundant. Connectivity between areas of indigenous forest is improved, and forests continue to provide high-quality drinking water and flood protection for local communities. These conservation priorities are achieved with contributions from a motivated community, and in collaboration with local authorities and other interested parties.

Animal pest control is managed collaboratively with other agencies, and is focused at priority ecosystem and species sites, including where it is important for flood protection. Pig, goat and possum populations are controlled with assistance from recreational and commercial hunters. The Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place remains outside the range of feral deer.

Visitors are aware of and actively assist to avoid the introduction of kauri dieback disease.

The mountainous backdrops, skylines and ridgelines along the Coromandel Range remain undeveloped. The scenic landscapes and natural character of the coast are protected with minimal or no structures apparent. At other locations, structures are in keeping with the natural form and scale of the surrounding landscape and natural vegetation cover.

Significant cultural and historic sites are protected. The Peninsula's diverse Māori and European history is integrated with visitor experiences, and users are aware of cultural sensitivities and the safety issues associated with visiting some sites.

Hauraki Whānui play an important role in the management of conservation values on the Peninsula, with Treaty settlements creating opportunities for collaborative management.

The Peninsula is a popular destination for domestic and international visitors, offering a spectrum of recreation opportunities, including camping, picnicking, short walks to iconic features such as kauri forests, overnight tramping, mountain biking, horse riding, hunting and four-wheel driving. Visitors take pleasure in the solitude and natural quiet of backcountry and remote areas, as well as the easily accessible opportunities to enjoy forest and coastal ecosystems and scenic landscapes along the coast. Visitors expect occasional encounters with aircraft, but at selected central, northern and coastal locations they should expect to not encounter aircraft.

Visitors leave the Peninsula with lasting memories and an appreciation of its conservation and heritage values. User groups, the community and the private sector help maintain recreation opportunities, and take a lead in the creation and maintenance of some recreation opportunities and facilities.

Commercial activities complement natural, historic and amenity values. Low-impact guiding opportunities facilitate increased recreational use, particularly in the Kauaeranga Valley. Other concessions, including filming and adventure sporting events, do not exceed the carrying capacity of recreational facilities, and have minimal impact



on other users and natural values. The commercial use of ecosystem services and resources results in an overall conservation gain for natural, cultural and historic values on public conservation lands.

A motivated community builds on its contribution to biodiversity protection and the upkeep of recreation opportunities.

### ***Northern Coromandel***

Northern Coromandel is a popular destination where the sense of remoteness and natural values are protected and appreciated by visitors and the community.

Moehau (including the Moehau Kiwi Sanctuary) supports healthy ecosystems, with thriving populations of threatened and at risk plants and animals. Pest plants and animals are scarce. Continuous habitat corridors to the coast are maintained and expanding. Species reintroductions are consistent with the ecosystem values present.

Healthy beach, dune and wetland ecosystems, particularly at Waikawau Bay, support coastal bird and plant populations, with threatened and at risk species, including pāteke/brown teal and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, increasing in their range. The community contributes to successful kiwi zone management, species protection and ecosystem restoration.

The scenic journey along the isolated back roads of Northern Coromandel is part of the visitor experience. Rural areas within the recreation reserves are managed to enhance biodiversity, and scenic and recreational values, and the area of land under grazing has reduced.

Visitors enjoy traditional 'kiwi family' camping, mountain biking and walks in peaceful, isolated settings. From Waikawau north to Cape Colville, they have no, or only very rare, encounters with aircraft. Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay and Fletcher Bay are Gateway Destinations for camping and enjoying the outdoors. Visitors to Port Jackson and Fantail Bay enjoy a basic coastal camping experience. The Coromandel Walkway is popular for walking and mountain biking. Coastal camping, walking and cycling opportunities have increased with minimal impact on natural and heritage values. Large sporting events utilise popular coastal tracks outside periods of peak visitation.

There are few recreation opportunities on the Moehau Range, in keeping with ecosystem restoration priorities and Moehau's sacred value to Hauraki Whānui. Hauraki Whānui are closely involved with management of Moehau and the cultural heritage landscape of Northern Coromandel, including interpretation and public appreciation of culturally significant sites and values.

### ***Thames Coast, Kuaeranga Valley and Broken Hills***

The Thames Coast, Kuaeranga Valley and Broken Hills area is recognised for its biodiversity and heritage values, and as an outdoor recreation hub on the Peninsula.

The integrity of priority ecosystems at Kopowai-Kuaeranga and Papakai are maintained and enhanced, along with other indigenous forest and montane ecosystem values. Populations of threatened and at risk species, including the dwarf greenhood orchid, are thriving. The protection of remnant Coromandel brown kiwi populations and other regionally important species is led by the community. Goats and possums are maintained at low densities within the Thames Coast flood protection area, and elsewhere based on ecosystem priorities.

Significant logging and mining heritage sites, including the mines at Broken Hills and kauri dams in the Kauaeranga Valley, are preserved. Culturally significant sites, particularly in the Kauaeranga Valley, are protected and their stories brought to life in partnership with Hauraki Whānui and the wider community. This diverse heritage landscape is enjoyed and enhanced at sites through the integration of stories with recreational experiences.

The interconnected track network provides a multitude of experiences that attract a diverse range of people to enjoy the scenic and peaceful natural landscape and diverse history. This area attracts people who enjoy a variety of educational outdoor adventures. As a popular Gateway Destination, the Kauaeranga Valley showcases kauri logging history and is the focal point for outdoor education opportunities on the Peninsula. The 80-bunk Pinnacles Hut and associated campsite is a hub for overnight trampers, while Crosbies Hut provides an overnight experience for small groups. Experienced backcountry users value unserviced areas between Tapu and Kaimarama.

Visitors to the Gateway Destination at Broken Hills learn about the area's mining history while enjoying family-friendly activities and camping experiences in a bush and river setting. The opportunity to traverse the Coromandel Range via tracks and huts from the Thames Coast, through the Kauaeranga Valley to Broken Hills is realised in partnership with interested parties. Hunting generally occurs away from areas that are popular with visitors.

The community and user groups help to maintain the track network in this area. The creation and maintenance of recreation opportunities, such as mountain biking and new or refurbished public accommodation facilities, is facilitated in partnership with the community and private sector.

### ***Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekirauponga***

The Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekirauponga area is recognised and highly valued for its natural and heritage values, and backcountry visitor setting.

The priority ecosystem at Otahu is maintained and restored, with forest health improving elsewhere, in partnership with other interested parties. Threatened species populations (including Archey's frog) are conserved with assistance from the community and interested parties. A community-led kiwi zone protects remnant Coromandel brown kiwi populations. Significant geological values are protected at Parakiwai, and a native forest landscape prevails.

Important heritage artefacts associated with kauri logging, gold mining and telegraph communication, including the actively managed Royal Standard Tramway, are preserved and integrated with recreation experiences.

Visitors experience outdoor adventures with a sense of isolation, but accept some noise disturbance in the vicinity of four-wheel driving routes. Maratoto is the focal area for four-wheel driving and trail bike activities on the Peninsula. These are restricted to the existing track network and are managed in cooperation with users to minimise conflict between user groups. Four-wheel driving clubs maintain tracks and a basic campsite within the Maratoto area.

Mining history features at Wentworth and Wharekirauponga, with the Wentworth Valley Gateway Destination (Wentworth Track and campsite) a focal point for walks and traditional camping in a bush setting. New recreation opportunities are developed in partnership with the community and interested parties, such as a new multi-day walk, which is open to the public.

## **POLICIES**

- 2.2.1 Identify biodiversity restoration and protection priorities on the Peninsula that iwi, the community and other organisations can assist with or lead.
- 2.2.2 Advocate through statutory and non-statutory processes for the protection of ecological, landscape and cultural values off public conservation land, in particular:
  - a) the indigenous forest corridor along the main Coromandel Range, including the Moehau Range, and mountain to sea indigenous vegetation sequences;
  - b) sensitive coastal and marine ecosystems (including estuaries, harbours, beaches and fragile dune systems) and wildlife habitats, particularly coastal and wetland species, along the Coromandel Peninsula coastline;
  - c) bird, especially shorebird and seabird, migratory pathways, and airspace used by bats; and
  - d) freshwater fish habitat and fish passage, particularly to maintain habitat connectivity and water quality from the coast to the headwaters of waterways that support threatened and at risk species.
- 2.2.3 Manage the range of recreation activities available on the Peninsula within the existing track network of recreation infrastructure, through (but not limited to):
  - a) increasing shared use of existing tracks where compatible with track surfaces and design, natural and heritage values, and the recreation setting;
  - b) modifying routes to minimise conflict between user groups where shared use creates, or has the potential to create, conflict;
  - c) seeking assistance from users, the community or other interested parties to maintain recreation infrastructure; and
  - d) consider closing some extremely low-use tracks and facilities where the same opportunity exists elsewhere on the Peninsula, to enable recreation opportunities to be provided at other locations where demand warrants the provision of new or improved tracks and facilities.
- 2.2.4 Liaise with recreational user groups and the public to identify opportunities for mountain biking, four-wheel driving and horse riding on formed routes, within and in addition to the existing road and track network managed by the Department, in accordance with Policies 3.3.6 (mountain bikes), 3.2.4 (vehicles) and 3.7.2 (horses) in Part Three.
- 2.2.5 Engage the community and interested organisations to identify linkages between recreation opportunities managed by the Department and opportunities elsewhere on the Peninsula, such as the Hauraki Rail Trail.
- 2.2.6 Develop recreation opportunities and facilities that are sited in locations that are suitable and safe for the proposed activity, and avoid or minimise adverse impacts on natural, cultural and historic values and other recreational users.
- 2.2.7 Maintain and expand camping opportunities, including provision for freedom camping, in Northern Coromandel, the Kuaotunu Peninsula, the Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and South Coromandel.

- 2.2.8 Liaise with local authorities to improve connectivity between recreation services on public conservation land and parks and reserves managed by district councils.
- 2.2.9 Structures should not be authorised on undeveloped public conservation land along the coast, to protect high natural character and scenic values, including (but not limited to) Opoutere, Onemana, Otama, New Chums and Waikawau Bay north to Cape Colville.
- 2.2.10 Should consider proposals for access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act in accordance with Policies 3.9.6 and 3.9.7 in Part Three and the following criteria:
- a) for land south of SH25a only;
  - b) the activity should avoid priority ecosystem sites and species populations, in particular habitats important for the persistence of native frogs, Coromandel brown kiwi, native bats, and other threatened and at risk species;
  - c) avoid or minimise adverse impacts on other natural values, including the indigenous forest corridor along the Coromandel Range; and
  - d) give priority to the protection of significant natural features, landscapes and cultural sites.
- 2.2.11 May allow sporting events provided that:
- a) adverse impacts on natural, cultural and historic values and other users are minimised;
  - b) existing tracks and facilities are used;
  - c) habitats that are important for the conservation of native frogs, Coromandel brown kiwi, native bats and other threatened fauna are avoided; and
  - d) if the events are at the following locations, they only occur between 16 February to 13 December (inclusive), excluding public holiday weekends, in any year:
    - (i) Coromandel Walkway;
    - (ii) Muriwai Walk;
    - (iii) Tracks on the Wentworth to Maratoto crossing;
    - (iv) Kauaeranga Kauri Trail;
    - (v) Designated Department of Conservation campsites.
- 2.2.12 Where sporting events and filming activities are authorised, the Department may:
- a) monitor the impact of the event or activity;
  - b) require specific measures to be taken to protect sites and values of high conservation value; and
  - c) require that locations be excluded from the event or activity if potential impacts on other users or the facilities are considered to be unacceptable.

- 2.2.13 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation land within this Place, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three.
- 2.2.14 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on other public conservation land in this Place, shown as Yellow Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2, 3.5.4, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three.
- 2.2.15 Should allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, only at the following locations, in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2, 3.3.5 and 3.3.7 to 3.3.9 in Part Three:
- a) Stony Bay Mountain Bike Track;
  - b) Coromandel Walkway;
  - c) Hotoritori Mountain Bike Track and Junction Track;
  - d) Hotoritori (horse) Track;
  - e) Wires Road;
  - f) Whangamata Track; and
  - g) Waipaheke Track.
- 2.2.16 Should allow the use of horses in this Place only at the following locations, in accordance with Policies 3.7.2 and 3.7.3 in Part Three:
- a) Hotoritori (horse) Track;
  - b) Wires Road; and
  - c) Whangamata Track.
- 2.2.17 Should allow the use of motorised vehicles only at the following locations, in accordance with Policies 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.4, 3.2.5, 3.2.8 and 3.2.9 in Part Three:
- a) Wires Road;
  - b) Whangamata Track (four-wheel drive vehicles only);
  - c) Loop Track (Maratoto) (expert four-wheel drive vehicles only); and
  - d) Waipaheke Track (motorcycles only).
- 2.2.18 Remove the unauthorised private accommodation at Waiwawa (Appendix 16), in accordance with Policy 3.10.7 in Part Three.
- 2.2.19 Seek the reclassification of the following areas to a land status that reflects the priority conservation values present:
- a) incorporate stewardship lands adjoining Coromandel Forest Park into that Park; and
  - b) change the road reserve status at Fantail Bay to recreation reserve.
- 2.2.20 Investigate and seek closure of unformed legal roads adjacent to or traversing public conservation land where this would facilitate the protection of natural, cultural or historic values and enhance recreation experiences.
- 2.2.21 Identify and progressively resolve encroachment, including unauthorised grazing, access ways and other activities, on public conservation land within this Place.

### ***Northern Coromandel***

- 2.2.22 Consider expanding recreation opportunities in Northern Coromandel in collaboration with interested parties, including (but not limited to):
- a) a multi-day coastal walking and cycling experience from Fletcher Bay to Sandy Bay;
  - b) small-scale, self-contained freedom camping opportunities at Sandy Bay, Goat Bay and Waiaro (McDonalds Recreation Reserve);
  - c) limited, small-scale, powered campervan sites at Waikawau Bay campsite; and
  - d) improving recreational access to farmed public conservation land from Fantail Bay to Waikawau Bay that is compatible with farm management activities and license agreements.
- 2.2.23 Increase conservation interpretation material and the delivery of education programmes at popular campsites and tracks.
- 2.2.24 Retire land from grazing and restore forest cover, including along the coast, waterway corridors and on erosion-prone land, within Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay, Sandy Bay, Fletcher Bay and Port Jackson Recreation Reserves, in conjunction with licensees and other interested parties, and when licenses are due for review or renewal.

### ***Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills***

- 2.2.25 Promote outdoor educational facilities and programmes in the Kauaeranga Valley, including the Department's Visitor Centre and its meeting facility, as valued education resources for schools and the community.
- 2.2.26 Consider expanding camping opportunities in this area in collaboration with interested parties, including (but not limited to):
- a) small-scale, self-contained freedom camping opportunities at Waikawau Recreation Reserve (Thames Coast); and
  - b) limited, small-scale, powered campervan sites adjacent to the Kauaeranga Visitor Centre.
- 2.2.27 Liaise with the education camp trusts to facilitate increased use and promotion of existing built accommodation facilities available in the Kauaeranga Valley, and consider opportunities that could increase the availability of these facilities to the general public when concessions are reviewed.
- 2.2.28 May authorise the construction of a new hut on the Hihi-Motutapere-Kaitarakihi Track network and public accommodation facilities in the Kauaeranga Valley, in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three, provided that:
- a) in the case of the Kauaeranga Valley, priority is given to the upgrade of existing built accommodation facilities over the construction of new public accommodation facilities;
  - b) structures are of a scale and design that are in keeping with the surrounding landscape and anticipated use; and
  - c) it is available for public use at all times as if it was a Department of Conservation hut.

2.2.29 Shared use of tracks may include trial periods to assess any impact on natural and heritage values and other users.

***Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekirauponga***

2.2.30 Liaise with recreational users and other interested parties to facilitate their assistance with monitoring and management of motorised vehicle, horse riding and mountain biking activities at Maratoto.

2.2.31 Consider expanding camping opportunities in this area in collaboration with interested parties, including (but not limited to) small-scale, self-contained freedom camping opportunities at the Maratoto car park and the Quarry Road car park (Wharekirauponga).

2.2.32 May authorise development of a multi-day walking opportunity and associated public accommodation facilities encompassing the Wentworth and Wharekirauponga Valleys in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three, provided that:

- a) it protects significant ecological, geological and historic values;
- b) the existing track network is used;
- c) any adverse impacts are minimised;
- d) structures and tracks are of a scale and design that are in keeping with the surrounding landscape and anticipated use; and
- e) it is available for public use at all times as if it was a Department of Conservation hut.



## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem site work programmes for the priority ecosystem sites in the Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway in the Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place has been completed.
- Review of land under grazing concession in Northern Coromandel (Fantail Bay to Waikawau Bay) to identify sites for retirement and restoration has been completed, and restoration has commenced.
- Interpretation planning and experiential development assessments have been completed for gateway destinations.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Outcomes from experiential development assessments and interpretation planning have been implemented at gateway destinations.
- The feasibility of reintroducing North Island kōkako to Moehau in Northern Coromandel has been investigated.
- Review of mountain bike, horse riding and four-wheel driving opportunities on the Coromandel Peninsula has been completed.
- All land under grazing concession in Northern Coromandel that has been identified for restoration has been retired from grazing.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- North Island kōkako have been reintroduced to Moehau in Northern Coromandel (if feasible).
- Changes to mountain bike, horse riding and four-wheel driving opportunities have been implemented.
- Changes to the legal status of public conservation land has been completed.

## 2.3 Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place

The Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place comprises all public conservation lands and waters from Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve to Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve, including Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve<sup>28</sup> and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) (refer Maps 7.5 and 7.6). Policy direction for this Place includes advocacy priorities for the protection of natural character, biodiversity and landscape values off public conservation land. The public conservation lands and waters within the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place are:

- Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve
- Diggers Hill Scenic Reserve
- Purangi River Marginal Strips
- Cook Bluff Marginal Strip
- Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve
- Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve
- Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve
- Te Pare Point Historic Reserve
- Te Pupuha Recreation Reserve
- Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve
- Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
- Wigmore Historic Reserve.

### Description

The Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place is valued for its scenic coastal landscape, important estuarine and dune ecosystems, cultural heritage, and protected marine ecosystem, as well as land-, island- and water-based recreation and tourism opportunities. It includes the only marine reserve in Waikato Conservancy and the popular tourist destination of Cathedral Cove, which is one of the most highly visited public conservation sites in the Conservancy.

The coastal landscape of this Place is characterised by rocky headlands, steep cliffs, and a rocky/platform foreshore with boulder and sandy beaches, and the occasional dune system. The rugged cliff tops provide impressive viewpoints and scenic backdrops. These natural features blend with views of coastal settlements, rural land, historical landmarks, native vegetation and relatively undeveloped areas of coastline. Many sections of the coastline have high visual appeal, stretches of which are protected by the sequence of coastal reserves in this Place. The coastline from Te Pare Point to Hot Water Beach is particularly dramatic and features blowhole formations. The maintenance and improvement of indigenous vegetation cover would enhance the area's natural character and scenic values.

The coastal ecosystems support the threatened tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, tōrea pango/variable oystercatcher (*Haematopus unicolor*), taranui/Caspian tern and pohowera/banded dotterel. The marine reserve environment contains a mosaic of habitats that support diverse marine life, including plants, crustaceans, molluscs, more than 50 fish species, 80 algae, and 140 mobile and sedentary invertebrate species.

The Whitianga Rock, Cook Bluff and Cathedral Cove reserves support remnant coastal forest and scrub habitats. Te Pupuha Recreation Reserve is largely covered with mixed native shrubland, while a nationally significant coastal dune ecosystem is found within

---

<sup>28</sup> 'Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve' is the legal gazetted name of this Marine Reserve.

Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve. The Purangi Estuary, which drains into Cooks Bay, supports significant mānawa/mangrove (*Avicennia marina*) forests and is one of the least modified estuaries on the Coromandel Peninsula. Diggers Hill Scenic Reserve, which is covered in remnant coastal forest, adjoins the estuary.

This Place has a diverse history of Māori and European occupation. Many historic sites, including pā sites, middens, pits and terraces, are evident on coastal reserve headlands. The abundance of kaimoana, combined with a subtropical climate, made the area a desirable place for settlement by Māori. Well-preserved pā sites and sites linked to landings and activities of Captain Cook feature at Whitianga Rock, Cook Bluff/Cooks Bay and Te Pare Point, and a further six archaeological sites are also present along Hot Water Beach. Walking tracks provide access to two pā sites that are actively managed by the Department, on Te Pare Point Historic Reserve and Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve, with historical interpretation also provided. Early farming settlement and coastal World War II watch stations also feature in the European history of the area at Wigmore Historic Reserve, Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island). Protection of those historic places in Appendix 11 is a management priority.

This Place is of great significance to Hauraki Whānui, particularly Ngāti Hei, who have direct links to historic pā sites that are managed by the Department. The sustainability and protection of kaimoana and traditional, cultural and historic values, both spiritual and physical, are important to Hauraki Whānui.

Land- and water-based recreation opportunities are wide ranging and include sunbathing, swimming, snorkelling, scuba-diving, marine mammal viewing, fishing (outside the Marine Reserve), boating and kayaking, walks, picnicking and enjoying the natural beauty and, in some locations, the sense of isolation of the coastline. Coastal walking tracks are a feature, and there is scope for additional opportunities within the existing reserve network, and for improved linkages with reserves administered by Thames-Coromandel District Council. Balancing the demands from increasing visitor pressure with maintenance of the values on which these experiences are based is a key management issue for this Place.

Most commercial activity at this Place occurs in Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and the Marine Reserve. Activities include the sale and hire of goods and services to the public in the Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, guided walking and kayaking tours, and boat tours to Cathedral Cove. Filming is popular within this Place, especially at Cathedral Cove, and marine mammal viewing is undertaken in the Marine Reserve.

The Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place and surrounding area experiences high levels of visitor use over the summer months. Whitianga has been identified as the Peninsula's settlement hub in the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint Plan. This is likely to increase demand for coastal subdivision and development in surrounding areas, which, in turn, has the potential to impact on the significant conservation values and highly valued coastal scenery in this Place.

### ***Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve***

Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve is a very popular destination and features strongly in international tourism marketing campaigns. In 2011/12, 140 000 visitors used the car park and track system (excluding those accessing the reserve by boat)<sup>29</sup>. Peak visitation occurs between December and March, with relatively low numbers during winter. Infrastructure and services are placed under significant pressure during the peak visitation period. The recreation facilities within the reserve are managed as an Icon Destination in combination with the track on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).

---

<sup>29</sup> Unpublished data, Department of Conservation.

The undeveloped and outstanding coastal scenery is the main attraction for visitors to the reserve and adjacent Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve. Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove include a natural amphitheatre, the iconic archway, golden sand beaches, and significant geomorphological and coastal landscape features. The underlying geology of the reserve means that it is prone to erosion, and instability of rock material in the archway and along coastal cliffs has, at times, posed a significant risk to public safety. Good vegetation cover across the reserve is important to ensure stability, and the restoration of native vegetation cover would also enhance the natural character of the reserve.

The walking track from Hahei Beach to Cathedral Cove is the only land access to the bays and coves within the reserve, and is an integral part of the visitor experience. Large crowds at Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove during peak periods can at times alter the visitor experience. Gemstone Bay, Stingray Bay and bays northwest of Cathedral Cove (the latter being accessible by water only) have lower visitation and provide a more peaceful setting for visitors. The reserve also provides land access to the adjacent Marine Reserve. Maintaining this range of visitor experiences is a management priority. The high visitation also presents an opportunity to increase understanding through interpretation of the natural, cultural and historic values of the reserve and adjacent Marine Reserve. Historic values at Cathedral Cove include a pā site above the archway.

The popularity of this area also provides opportunity for economic gain from commercial activity. However, if not carefully managed, this in turn has the potential to have adverse impacts on the natural values and setting that have made this place so popular. Accordingly, the Department intends to control activities within the reserve. This will be achieved by extending the reserve boundary to Mean Low Water Springs, creating a commercial hub at the car park, which will include extending the car park to cater for approximately 200 vehicles, and managing the number and spread of visitors across the reserve to protect the natural setting and visitor experience, particularly during periods of peak visitation. This will include the provision of visitor facilities to support this level of use, the creation of designated coastal landing sites and the control of some activities, including commercial passenger services (e.g. water taxis), kayak tours, and the sale and hire of goods and services to the public. The Department may also seek mechanisms to control private watercraft use, should this impact on visitor experiences.

### ***Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve***

Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve provides long-term legal protection for important intertidal, sub tidal and deep water ecosystems and habitats. The Department manages this area of the sea and foreshore to preserve marine habitats in their natural state for scientific study and education. It is also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 1.7). All marine life, the seabed and the foreshore are protected, and annual biological monitoring informs management about the health of the marine ecosystem. The Marine Reserve is accessed from Hahei Beach and Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, which provides an opportunity to showcase the marine environment in a location that is popular with domestic and international visitors. In particular, the Gemstone Bay snorkel trail provides a recreation and educational opportunity for visitors to experience and learn about the marine ecosystem. Adjacent terrestrial reserves and associated indigenous vegetation cover provide an important buffer between farmland and the Marine Reserve.

Illegal fishing, user conflicts (especially between motorised and non-motorised water-based activities in the Marine Reserve) and the large number of people enjoying the reserve during the peak visitor season are key issues. Minimising conflict between water users is a focus for management; however, the absence of legal authority to control commercial and water-based activities in the Marine Reserve does limit the mechanisms available for management by the Department. Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine

Reserve Committee, which includes community, tangata whenua, technical and Waikato Conservation Board representation, advises the Department on issues concerning the Marine Reserve. The long-term viability of the Marine Reserve requires the cooperation and support of all users, including commercial operators.

### ***Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve***

Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) is highly modified as a result of previous farming activity. Vegetation cover includes regenerating and replanted coastal indigenous forest, and areas of grassland and kōti/gorse (*Ulex europaeus*). It supports remnant coastal forest, recovering scrub habitat, the threatened fireweed (*Senecio scaberulus*) and tara/white-fronted tern, and is free of introduced mammals. The at risk Mahoenui giant wētā and giant-flowered broom (*Charmichaelia williamsii*) have been established on the island. The legal status of Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve and its island classification as an Open (island) Sanctuary<sup>30</sup> allows for controlled recreation and nature tourism opportunities. The walking track is managed as part of the Icon Destination, incorporating tracks in Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve. Opportunities include kayaking, day visits, limited camping and walking. There is the potential for establishing a small, basic campsite, carrying out small group tours, and possibly developing small-scale booked public accommodation to facilitate public use and nature tourism opportunities. Public access to the island could be provided by a regular water taxi service. The community currently helps the Department with conservation management on the island and there is significant potential for increased community assistance with island restoration. Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) is also an ideal site for interpreting island biodiversity values in Waikato Conservancy and the Department's approach to island management in general (refer section 2.1).

### ***Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve***

Situated north of the Hot Water Beach township, Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve was created to facilitate public access to the beach, and to protect the sand dunes and undeveloped scenic backdrop. The coastline south of the reserve, which incorporates the Hot Water Beach thermal springs, is administered by Thames-Coromandel District Council. The scenic and fragile dune system within the reserve is a priority ecosystem site for the Department and the foreshore hosts coastal bird populations, including the threatened tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel. Public access to the beach and foreshore is currently provided on land adjacent to the reserve that is administered by Thames-Coromandel District Council. Unauthorised motorised vehicle use (four-wheel drives and all terrain vehicles (ATVs)) has the potential to have a significant impact on biodiversity and landscape values. Protecting and restoring the sensitive dune ecosystem and maintaining an undeveloped coastal landscape for public enjoyment are key management priorities for this area. The legal status of the reserve as a recreation reserve does not reflect the high priority biodiversity and scenic values present. Therefore, a change in status to scenic reserve will be sought.

---

<sup>30</sup> Department of Conservation 2010: The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.

## Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place

### **OUTCOME**

The inherent natural values, natural character and dramatic coastal landscape of the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place are protected and remain a draw card for national and international visitors and locals alike.

Priority threatened coastal bird populations and other threatened species are thriving. The ecological health of marine, island, coastal, estuarine and dune ecosystems within this Place is improving. Increased indigenous vegetation cover enhances ecosystem integrity, wildlife habitat and natural character, and contributes to improved land stability.

There is a vegetated buffer zone between the coastal-marine ecosystems and adjacent farmland.

The community makes a significant contribution to ecosystem conservation and the restoration of native vegetation cover.

The natural character of the foreshore and the margins of the coastal reserves is maintained and enhanced, with minimal built structures.

European and Māori history and cultural heritage is preserved, showcasing Māori settlement and early European arrival.

Visitors enjoy a diversity of land- and water-based recreation experiences, including accessible short walks, camping, swimming, snorkelling, scuba diving and kayaking. These experiences connect people with the values present, and they leave with fond memories and a greater appreciation of the Place. The number of people encountered varies depending on the time of year and site visited.

Visitors rarely encounter aircraft on public conservation lands and waters, particularly during the peak visitor season.

The Department collaborates with Hauraki Whānui, the community and local authorities to achieve integrated management of the natural, cultural and historic values of this Place.

Commercial activity does not detract from the landscape, natural, historic, cultural and recreational values of the Place. Conflicts between user groups or activities are avoided.

### ***Whitianga Rock and Te Pare Point***

As part of the landscape, the headland pā sites at Whitianga Rock and Te Pare Point are preserved through the retention of vegetation cover and complementary restoration of indigenous vegetation. Visitors to Te Pare Point experience a walk that is sympathetic to the cultural landscape, enjoy uninterrupted views of the coastline and leave with an appreciation of the site's historic significance to Hauraki Whānui. Walking tracks at and between Whitianga Rock and Cooks Beach are integrated with walks managed by Thames-Coromandel District Council, along which is interpretation of European and Māori heritage associated with Captain Cook and Māori occupation.

### ***Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve***

Cathedral Cove is the most popular destination in this Place. Its outstanding coastal landscape values and natural features are protected, and it is cherished by Hauraki Whānui, visitors and the local community. Access is by walking tracks, or by boat through the Marine Reserve. There is a quality track system that is managed as an Icon Destination, and which weaves through restored native vegetation to the coast. Track design facilitates

access and helps to reduce the frequency of visitor encounters. People are aware of the presence of significant natural hazards. Visitors to Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove expect to encounter other visitors, including land- and water-based guided tours, motorised and non-motorised watercraft, and independent visitors, especially during the peak visitor season. Gemstone Bay, Stingray Bay and the coastline to the northwest of Cathedral Cove offer a quieter, more secluded experience, with less people and an absence of commercial activity, apart from the occasional tour group. Commercial activity within the reserve and along the foreshore does not detract from the natural values that prevail, and has a minimal impact on the natural setting and the experiences of others.

### ***Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve***

Marine life is thriving, and research and monitoring has led to increased knowledge about the status of the marine ecosystem and species. The Marine Reserve is a popular hub for water-based recreation within this Place and is recognised as a best practice model for marine education. Users respect biodiversity values within the reserve, and conflict between users is minimal. People visit the reserve to experience and learn about marine ecosystems. Land-based access and interpretation is provided from Hahei Beach and Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, and the Gemstone Bay snorkel trail connects visitors to the marine ecosystem. The community, iwi, visitors and concessionaires benefit from a cooperative approach to reserve management that reduces user conflict and minimises impacts on marine values and the adjacent Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve.

### ***Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve***

Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) is a biodiversity 'showcase' island destination, on which recreation and conservation occur in close proximity to each other. Free of introduced mammals, the island supports healthy populations of threatened birds, plants and wētā, and is an important site for the reintroduction of other threatened flora and fauna. Biosecurity ensures that the risks of pest incursions are minimised. Restored indigenous forest and scrub habitats cover a large proportion of the island. The public enjoys a range of small island recreation experiences, including day visits, overnight stays at a basic campsite, and walking opportunities, in a peaceful, secluded setting. Simple, quality facilities are provided to support these experiences and facilitate access onto the island. The island walking track, which is managed as an Icon Destination, immerses visitors in the natural, historic and cultural values of the island. The island is also a focal point for interpreting conservation management on other Hauraki Islands. As a centre for conservation volunteer opportunities, biodiversity values are enhanced through restoration programmes, with assistance from the community. Small-scale guided nature tourism and commercial water taxi services enable visitors to access and enjoy an 'island experience' and contribute to island restoration. A small-scale public accommodation facility, if feasible in terms of potential impacts and benefits to island restoration and recreation, is realised in partnership with external parties and is open to the public.

### ***Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve***

The undulating dune landscape and priority ecosystem provides an intact natural and scenic backdrop to Hot Water Beach. This important ecosystem is healthy and functioning with improved natural character. The tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel population is thriving. Visitors enjoy and appreciate the undeveloped natural coastal landscape and peaceful setting, and respect and learn about the dune ecosystem as part of this experience. Infrastructure necessary to protect public safety is located at the southern end of the reserve, to protect natural and scenic values.



## **POLICIES**

- 2.3.1 Advocate through statutory and non-statutory processes for the protection of landscape, and ecological and cultural values within and adjacent to this Place, in particular:
- a) the highly valued scenic coastal landscapes and natural features, including natural character, that underpin the experiences and popularity of this Place;
  - b) coastal ecosystems, including dune systems, beaches and estuaries, and those ecosystems that provide habitat for threatened and at risk species, particularly shorebirds;
  - c) the maintenance of indigenous vegetation cover that contributes to natural character and land stability; and
  - d) the Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve.
- 2.3.2 Work cooperatively with Thames-Coromandel District Council to facilitate integrated management of recreation opportunities between sites administered by the Council and the Department.
- 2.3.3 Further develop the relationship with Hauraki Whānui to enhance their special connection with this Place, particularly with respect to sites of cultural significance and their role as kaitiaki.
- 2.3.4 Should not allow the construction of built accommodation within this Place, except as provided for in Policy 2.3.32 for this Place, to protect the natural character and dramatic coastal landscape of this Place.
- 2.3.5 Minimise the placement of structures on Te Pupuha Recreation Reserve to protect its scenic values, particularly when viewed from the sea.
- 2.3.6 May allow aircraft take-offs and landings in this Place, shown as Orange Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with the criteria listed in Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2, 3.5.5, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three, and provided that:
- a) there is a maximum of 40 landings in any year across the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place Orange Zone;
  - b) the activity only occurs on week days between 1 March and 30 November (inclusive) in any year, excluding public holidays;
  - c) the activity also meets and is assessed against the criteria identified in Policy 3.5.6 in Part Three; and
  - d) landing and take-off (including hovering) sites are identified during the assessment process.
- 2.3.7 Review the carrying capacity of, and limits and controls on commercial activities within, Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve and on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) outlined in Policies 2.3.11 to 2.3.21 and 2.3.26 to 2.3.32 (below) for this Place within 3 years of this CMS becoming operative. If, as a result of that review, the limits and controls are found to not adequately protect natural, historic, cultural and recreational values, or enable effective management of conflicting user demands and new opportunities, then a publicly notified plan change to this CMS will be undertaken to amend the controls and limits set in those Policies.

### ***Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve***

- 2.3.8 Work cooperatively with Thames-Coromandel District Council, tourism organisations and the local community to facilitate integrated management of infrastructure, services and the visitor experience at Cathedral Cove.
- 2.3.9 Extend the seaward boundary of Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve to Mean Low Water Springs.
- 2.3.10 Consider providing limited, small-scale, overnight, powered campervan and freedom camping sites in the Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve car park in collaboration with interested parties.
- 2.3.11 Manage activities and water-based access in Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve in accordance with Policies 2.3.12-2.3.21 for this Place, and subject to Policy 2.3.7 for this Place, to reconcile conflicting user demands and to protect natural scenic values and the visitor setting.
- 2.3.12 Should confine all commercial watercraft landings and commercial kayak tour landings to the designated Coastal Landing Sites at Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove, as shown on Map 7.6, to minimise the disruptions to people using the beach. The Mares Leg Cove Coastal Landing Site should be used as an alternative landing site only when conditions are not safe to land at the Cathedral Cove Coastal Landing Site.
- 2.3.13 Should not provide or permit any landing structures for watercraft within the reserves to maintain the coastline as a place of unmodified natural beauty.
- 2.3.14 May allow commercial watercraft landings and passenger services only in accordance with the following criteria and limits, to manage visitor numbers and minimise disruption to people using the beach:
- a) watercraft only, up to a maximum of 8 m in length;
  - b) up to a maximum of 400 person movements<sup>31</sup> (200 people) per day for passenger services;
  - c) preference is given to operators offering a scheduled service to the public; and
  - d) operators should be encouraged to minimise landing time on the beach.
- 2.3.15 May allow commercial kayak tours and landings only in accordance with the following criteria and limits, to manage visitor numbers and minimise disruption to people using the beach:
- a) up to a maximum of 192 people per day including guides;
  - b) up to a maximum of 24 kayaks (48 people including guides) landing at the designated Coastal Landing Site at any one time; and
  - c) a minimum of one guide to every ten visitors.
- 2.3.16 May seek a bylaw to control the use of private watercraft within the reserves to minimise disruption to people using the beach.

---

<sup>31</sup> One drop-off and pick-up equals two person movements.

- 2.3.17 Should not allow private or commercial use of motorised vehicles (including hybrid land/watercraft) on beaches within the reserves, except as provided for by Policies 2.3.12 and 2.3.14 for this Place, to minimise disruption to people using the beach.
- 2.3.18 Minimise the provision of visitor facilities and other structures along coastal sections of the Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve by concentrating visitor facilities and structures at the reserve car park, and ensuring that those facilities are set back from the coastal margin, to protect the coastline of the reserve as a place of unmodified natural beauty and the scenic viewing opportunities from the reserve car park.
- 2.3.19 May allow the commercial provision of visitor information and the sale and hire of goods or services only in accordance with the following criteria, to protect the unmodified natural beauty of the coastline and the visitor setting:
- a) the activity (including mobile vendors) only occurs within or adjacent to the reserve car park;
  - b) it complements the visitor experience by being directly related to the public use and enjoyment of Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove ) Marine Reserve;
  - c) it does not detract from the natural setting;
  - d) it is at a scale that is in keeping with the capacity of the reserve car park;
  - e) preference is given to operators offering a scheduled service to the public; and
  - f) it is assessed in terms of Policy 2.3.20 for this Place where the activity involves construction of temporary or permanent structures.
- 2.3.20 May allow structures, such as the development of a combined café-type facility and visitor information centre only in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three and the following criteria, to protect the unmodified natural beauty of the coastline and the visitor setting within the reserve:
- a) any structures are located within or immediately adjacent to the reserve car park, and sited away from the coastal margin of the car park; and
  - b) any structures are sympathetically designed to minimise impacts on the surrounding landscape and natural values.
- 2.3.21 May allow other activities and events, including organised sports events and filming only in accordance to the following criteria, to protect the unmodified natural beauty of the coastline and the visitor setting within the reserves:
- a) the activity occurs between 1 March and 30 November (inclusive) of any year, excluding public holidays and weekends;
  - b) in the case of events that by design or purpose must occur during weekends, they only occur on weekends during the period specified in subsection ‘a’ of this Policy, excluding public holiday weekends;
  - c) impacts on the experience of other visitors, including visual and physical intrusion to the reserve, are minimised;
  - d) the public’s right to freedom of entry and access is unconstrained unless it is necessary for their protection in using the reserves;

- e) impacts on natural, cultural and historic values of the reserve are minimised; and
- f) in the case of filming, the activity is also considered in accordance with the criteria in Policies 3.15.1 to 3.15.3 in Part Three.

***Whanganui-a-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve***

- 2.3.22 Develop, implement and promote a ‘share with care’ code of conduct for users of the Marine Reserve, in collaboration with the community, concessionaires, iwi and local authorities, and include it as a requirement on all concessions within the Marine Reserve.
- 2.3.23 Support and facilitate a cooperative working relationship with Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve Committee.
- 2.3.24 Monitor the compliance of activities undertaken in the Marine Reserve and prosecute repeat or serious offenders.
- 2.3.25 Promote marine conservation within the reserve via conservation events such as Sea Week.

***Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve***

- 2.3.26 Manage activities and access in accordance with Policies 2.3.27–2.3.32 for this Place, to protect biodiversity values and the visitor setting on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).
- 2.3.27 All commercial watercraft pick-ups/drop-offs and commercial kayak tour landings should occur in the designated Coastal Landing Site on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), as shown on Map 7.6, to protect biodiversity values and the visitor setting.
- 2.3.28 Provide a landing platform in collaboration with concessionaires and other interested parties at the Coastal Landing Site on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), to facilitate and manage access to Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) and thus protect biodiversity values.
- 2.3.29 May allow limited guided nature tourism on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) only in accordance with the following criteria, to protect biodiversity values:
  - a) the activity is directly related to the appreciation of conservation values of the island;
  - b) the activity contributes to island restoration and conservation activities on the island;
  - c) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006);
  - d) the activity is consistent with the Department’s Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification for Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) (Open Sanctuary);
  - e) access is by motorised watercraft (e.g. a water taxi service) or kayak only, and:
    - (i) watercraft are able, and of an appropriate size, to moor alongside a small platform;
    - (ii) preference is given to operators offering a scheduled service to the public;

- f) the following limits are met:
  - (i) a maximum of 55 people visit the island per day (including overnight stays);
  - (ii) a maximum of ten visitors to one guide per tour group;
  - (iii) a maximum of one tour group staying overnight per day<sup>32</sup>.
- 2.3.30 May allow the maximum daily limits specified in Policy 2.3.29 for this Place to be exceeded for the purposes of transporting volunteers to the island for conservation restoration activities or for holding conservation events.
- 2.3.31 Manage island biosecurity in accordance with the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006).
- 2.3.32 May allow construction of a small-scale public accommodation facility on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three and provided that:
  - a) it is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;
  - b) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Conservancy Island Biosecurity Plan (2006);
  - c) it is sympathetically designed and built to avoid or minimise impacts on the biodiversity, historic and landscape values of the island;
  - d) it has a maximum capacity of ten people; and
  - e) it is available for public use at all times as if it was a Department of Conservation hut.
- 2.3.33 Develop recreational facilities in a manner that does not negatively impact on biodiversity values.
- 2.3.34 Promote recreation and volunteer opportunities on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).

***Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve***

- 2.3.35 Manage public access and vehicle use to protect the fragile dune ecosystem in accordance with Policies 3.2.6 and 3.2.7 in Part Three.
- 2.3.36 Investigate reclassification of the reserve to scenic reserve status, to afford more appropriate legal protection to the scenic landscape, sensitive dune ecosystem and threatened species present.
- 2.3.37 Should not allow development, including structures, in Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve, except as provided for in Policy 2.3.38 for this Place, to protect biodiversity values and the intact natural and scenic backdrop.
- 2.3.38 May allow limited structures within the designated area at the south end of the Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve, as shown on Map 7.6, to protect biodiversity and scenic values only in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three and provided that:

---

<sup>32</sup> Group size for overnight stays may be restricted to less than 10 visitors and one guide (11), if camping or other accommodation facilities have a lower capacity.

- a) any structure and associated activity is for the purpose of providing an essential service for public safety only;
- b) any structure is in keeping with the surrounding landscape, preferably single storey, and not visible from the beach; and
- c) any structure is located on a modified site dominated by exotic vegetation.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem site work programme for the Hot Water Beach priority ecosystem site has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway in this Place (if any) has been completed.
- A 'share with care' code of conduct for Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve has been developed and promoted.
- Experiential development assessments have been completed for the Icon Destination within Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve and other popular visitor destinations within this Place.
- Review of the carrying capacity of, and limits and controls on commercial activities within, Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) Recreation Reserve has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Outcomes from the review of the carrying capacity of, and limits and controls on commercial activities within, Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) Recreation Reserve have been implemented.
- Visitor monitoring data (qualitative and quantitative) have been analysed and reviewed for land- and water-based activities on public conservation lands in this Place and the Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve.
- Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve reclassification has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve 10-year vegetation restoration plan has been implemented.
- Any further changes to recreation opportunities across the Place have been identified and implemented.

## 2.4 Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place

The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place encompasses the coastal and intertidal wetland of the southern Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana and adjoining public conservation land administered by the Department (refer Map 7.7). Policy direction for this Place focuses on sites managed by the Department and the protection of significant conservation values across the Place, including the integrated management of pressures and threats originating from surrounding catchments and the marine environment. This Place traverses both Waikato and Auckland Conservancies.

### Description

The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana wetland (hereafter referred to as ‘the Wetland’) is listed as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention. It is important as an over-wintering site for internationally significant birdlife. The Place also supports threatened native species, provides important ecosystem services, contains rare landforms, has a rich cultural history, and provides passive recreation opportunities and cultural food resources.

The Wetland covers approximately 7800 ha of intertidal flats and margins on the southern and western shores of the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana. A large proportion is comprised of foreshore and seabed within the coastal-marine area that is administered by Waikato Regional Council through the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan. The remaining land areas are in a mix of private and public ownership, with the Department and Hauraki District Council administering pockets of public land along the coastal margin. The Wetland is also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 1.7), and close to several regional parks to the west and the Coromandel Forest Park to the east.

Not only is the Wetland one of four coastal wetlands of international importance in New Zealand, but it is also one of New Zealand’s three most important coastal sites for wading birds, and is identified as an area of significant conservation value in the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan. As an interface between terrestrial, freshwater and marine environments, the Wetland is vulnerable to pressures from both marine and land use activities. The health of the Wetland is inextricably linked to the health of the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, the Hauraki Gulf and waterways draining surrounding catchments, including the Hunua Ranges, Coromandel Range and, particularly, the Hauraki Plains. Pressures include eutrophication, sedimentation, contamination, habitat loss, unauthorised livestock grazing, human disturbance and invasive species<sup>33</sup>, particularly introduced sedges, spartina and saltwater paspalum (*Paspalum vaginatum*).

The highly productive intertidal flats of the Wetland include features such as shallow estuarine water, mud and sand flats, shellfish beds, sand bars, river mouths, mānawa/mangrove forest, salt marsh and freshwater swamp. Terrestrial margins are comprised of shell banks and grass flats, with the area between Miranda and Kaiāua being one of the world’s best examples of a chenier plain, a rare and internationally significant geological landform. Approximately 132 bird species have been recorded within the Wetland, 43 of which are migratory.

Tidal flats provide internationally important feeding and breeding habitat for waterfowl and shorebirds, and feeding habitat for approximately 35 000 migratory wading birds. This includes up to 11 000 birds from the East Asian-Australasian Flyway, a migratory route between the Northern and Southern Hemispheres that terminates at the Wetland.

---

<sup>33</sup> Brownell, B. 2008: Muddy Feet Phase II: Firth of Thames Ramsar Site gap analysis working paper. Tīkapa Kahawai Coastal/Marine Advisory Service, Kaiāua, New Zealand.



Key species include kuaka/bar-tailed godwit, huahou/lesser or red knot and sharp-tailed sandpiper (*Calidris acuminata*). Threatened and at risk New Zealand migrants such as the ngutuparore/wrybill, South Island pied oystercatcher, pohowera/banded dotterel and poaka/pied stilt (*Himantopus himantopus*) overwinter in the area. Marine habitats within the Wetland and the wider Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana support a diverse fish fauna, including pātiki/flounder (*Rhomosolea plebeian*), rays, sharks and tuna/eels, and marine mammals, such as orca and several other species of whale and dolphin. Marine mammal strandings have occurred on the western foreshore of the Wetland, making this location of particular significance to iwi.

Estuarine wetland habitats support threatened and at risk non-migratory species, including matuku/Australasian bittern, mohopereru/banded rail and mātātā/North Island fernbird; and shell banks provide important breeding habitat for the threatened tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel. Bird and skink species also rely on terrestrial habitats along the wetland margin. In situ protection of birdlife, and habitat degradation within and surrounding the Wetland are important inter-agency management issues. The New Zealand Government is a signatory to the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership, an international partnership aimed at protecting migratory birds and their habitats along this migratory route.

Mānawa/mangrove forests and salt marsh communities provide nursery habitat for fish and support birdlife. Mānawa/mangroves also buffer coastal-marine habitats from the effects of land-based activities such as sedimentation and nutrient run-off. However, increased sediment has led to the expansion of mānawa/mangroves into the roosting and feeding habitats of wading birds, and is thought to be linked to declining trends in several wading species, including ngutuparore/wrybill, pohowera/banded dotterel, curlew sandpiper (*Calidris ferruginea*) and turnstone (*Arenaria interpres*)<sup>34</sup>.

The Wetland and wider Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana provide important ecosystem services by trapping sediment and preventing coastal erosion. These areas have been highly modified by an array of land use practices (e.g. intensive agriculture, mining, landfill development and flood control management) and are particularly vulnerable to the ongoing effects of land use activities on the Hauraki Plains. The Piako and Waihou Rivers deposit significant sediment and nutrient loads into the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana. Other potential stressors to the Wetland site include sediment contamination linked to historical mining, and wastewater discharges into rivers and the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana. Aquaculture also has the potential to threaten water quality and feeding habitats within the Wetland. Other activities that also have potential to impact on the Wetland and birdlife are illegal vehicle use, freedom camping, the harvesting of shells from the foreshore, effluent and litter pollution, harassment of wildlife by uncontrolled dogs and cats, and disturbance of wildlife by paragliding activities.

Māori traditionally use the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana as a site for gathering shellfish, fishing and catching waterfowl. There are also significant historic waka voyaging routes throughout the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana. Many culturally important sites such as pā, kāinga (unfortified villages), middens, terraces, pits and wāhi tapu are dotted along the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana coast and found within the Wetland. The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, including the Wetland, is of great significance to Hauraki Whānui, and maintaining the health of the Wetland, protecting culturally significant sites and recognition of the role of Hauraki Whānui as kaitiaki are key issues for iwi.

---

<sup>34</sup> Hauraki Gulf Forum 2011: State of our Gulf: Tīkapa Moana—Hauraki Gulf State of the Environment Report 2011. Auckland Council, Auckland, New Zealand.

Both commercial and recreational fishing take place in the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, with tuna/shortfin eel (*Anguilla australis*) and pātiki/flounder targeted in or near the Wetland. Recreation activities associated with the Wetland are coastal walking, bird watching and fishing. Freedom camping also occurs at one location. Basic tracks provide access to bird viewing hides at Miranda and north of Miranda along the coastal margin. The Miranda Naturalists' Trust operates its own shorebird education centre at Miranda, and the Trust, along with the New Zealand Ornithological Society and other interested organisations, plays a lead role in increasing understanding and awareness of the wetland ecosystem and birdlife. Activities led by these organisations include advocacy, protection of birdlife, ecological research and bird surveys. Improved access and on-site interpretation would enhance public use and appreciation of the Wetland.

A proposed continuation of the Hauraki Rail Trail from Kopu to Kaiaua following the margins of the Wetland site is supported in principle by the Department. It has the potential to increase recreational use and enjoyment of this area, and to enhance access to the recreation opportunities at Miranda. The development and management of new recreation and commercial opportunities, including access to the coast within the Wetland, construction of structures, and provision of services and goods to the public, would need to be carefully managed to minimise any adverse effects on birdlife, the wetland ecosystem and the peaceful, undeveloped setting.

Inter-agency cooperation and a collaborative approach to managing pressures and threats to this coastal wetland are particularly important given the Wetland's international status and the influence of surrounding catchments and the wider marine environment on its ecological integrity. The Department is committed to working with iwi, other agencies and organisations, landowners, and communities to meet the protection and priority management needs of this Place.

Three programmes critical to the long-term preservation of this Place are:

- 1) The Muddy Feet Project, which is being led by Waikato Regional Council to achieve collaborative management and action at the Wetland
- 2) Marine spatial planning for the Hauraki Gulf, which is being led by Auckland Council and Waikato Regional Council
- 3) The Hauraki Gulf Forum, which was set up to facilitate integrated management of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

Management actions for the Wetland include integrated catchment management to reduce sedimentation and nutrient inputs, particularly from the Hauraki Plains; formal protection of the Wetland; and on-site management to restore and protect important habitats and birdlife, and to remove in situ or adjacent sources of ecosystem degradation and pollution. In addition, ongoing research to improve understanding of the implications of catchment-wide impacts is needed to inform management.

## Outcome, policies and milestones for the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place

### OUTCOME

The internationally important Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana wetland is a legally protected sanctuary in which ecosystem health is improving, and bird and marine life are flourishing. Conservation management of this Place is well coordinated and a success story for coastal wetland conservation. The area of legally protected land along the coastal margin of the Wetland has increased.

The Wetland hosts a diverse array of healthy wading and wetland bird populations. Threatened birds, such as the ngutuparore/wrybill and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, are increasing in their range. The diversity of wetland habitats present are protected and maintained. Coordinated and collaborative research and monitoring ensures that the coastal ecosystem and the impact of sediment and nutrient inputs are better understood.

Indigenous vegetation communities are restored in collaboration with iwi, territorial authorities, the community and other interested parties at priority sites along the coast. Sedimentation, and nutrient and contaminant inputs to the Wetland are significantly reduced. Decreased sedimentation means that mānawa/mangrove forests are no longer expanding into intertidal areas. The maintenance of ecosystem services, including flood mitigation and sediment containment, has a neutral effect on ecosystem functioning and priority bird habitat.

Invasive pest plants are maintained to low densities at priority sites. Low-impact grazing is used to control pest plants on public conservation land in a way that benefits ecological values. Introduced mammalian predators are controlled to low densities by the community to protect indigenous bird populations.

The mauri of the Wetland and its value as a 'food basket' is enhanced by all who share responsibility for it. Culturally significant sites and values are protected collaboratively. The coastal wetland ecosystem and birdlife are respected by all visitors to the Wetland and adjacent reserves.

Recreation opportunities are provided in collaboration with local authorities, iwi, interested organisations and landowners. As a well-visited nature tourism destination, the Wetland is a place where people experience vast intertidal flats that are teeming with wading birds in a peaceful, undeveloped setting. Visitors access the wetland foreshore by foot only at defined locations to protect the sensitive ecosystem and bird and marine life. Bird hides, viewpoints and strategically placed interpretation along coastal tracks enhance these experiences while maintaining the natural setting. On-site interpretation is integrated with information provided at the Miranda Shorebird Centre and highlights the values of the site, such as birdlife, the coastal wetland ecosystem, cultural values and the chenier plain.

Local authorities, iwi, the Department, interested organisations and landowners work collaboratively to manage pressures and threats to the Wetland, particularly those originating from the Hauraki Plains catchment, and areas within and adjacent to the Wetland.

## **POLICIES**

- 2.4.1 Advocate for a reduction in catchment-wide impacts on the Wetland, particularly with respect to:
- a) minimising sediment and nutrient inputs; and
  - b) protecting wildlife habitat, botanical values and hydrological processes.
- 2.4.2 Advocate for the prevention of aircraft activity within, adjacent to and above the Wetland, particularly low-flying aircraft including paragliding and aerobatics, during important migratory periods, including from early September to the end of March each year<sup>35</sup> for wading birds.
- 2.4.3 Advocate for and work collaboratively with the Muddy Feet Project partners and the Ministry of Primary Industries to achieve protection of the Wetland and bird and marine life from adverse impacts associated with marine-based activities (such as fishing and aquaculture) in the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana.
- 2.4.4 Work with local authorities to facilitate cooperative management of activities on reserves within and adjacent to the Wetland to protect habitat and ecosystem values in respect of:
- a) freedom camping;
  - b) dog and cat control;
  - c) litter and pollution management;
  - d) shell harvesting on the foreshore and chenier plain; and
  - e) vehicle use.
- 2.4.5 Support the activities of the Miranda Naturalists' Trust in collaboration with other Muddy Feet Project partners and where consistent with the Department's responsibilities.
- 2.4.6 Uphold New Zealand's obligations to protect the Wetland and migratory wading bird habitat under the Ramsar Convention and East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership in collaboration with the Muddy Feet Project partners and other interested parties.
- 2.4.7 Secure additional legal protection of land within and adjacent to the Wetland to protect habitat and ecosystem values, including where such opportunities arise, extension of protected land along the wetland coastal margin.
- 2.4.8 Should not authorise grazing in the Orongo Conservation Area and marginal strip (Waitakaruru) adjoining the Wetland to avoid nutrient run-off, and seek to fence these areas to prevent stock trespass.
- 2.4.9 Minimise visitor facilities and structures on public conservation land within this Place, and work with other agencies and the Muddy Feet Project partners and interested parties to achieve this at other locations within or adjacent to the Wetland. Any structures on public conservation land should be small in scale, preferably single storey, and designed in a manner that is in keeping with the surrounding landscape and does not detract from the peaceful, undeveloped nature of the Place.

---

<sup>35</sup> The exact date of arrival and departure of migratory birds will vary from year to year.

- 2.4.10 Should not authorise built accommodation and the hire and sale of goods and services on public conservation land within this Place, to protect the peaceful, undeveloped nature of this Place.
- 2.4.11 Consider proposals for new recreation opportunities on public conservation land, and work with others to facilitate recreation opportunities, in accordance with the following criteria:
- a) adverse effects on ecological values, particularly birdlife, are minimised;
  - b) track and facility development is avoided at ecologically sensitive sites;
  - c) access to beaches is by foot only, and is managed to minimise disturbance to birdlife and other sensitive values; and
  - d) understanding and appreciation of the Wetland is enhanced.
- 2.4.12 Should not authorise motorised vehicle access on public conservation land within this Place, except where authorised as part of a grazing concession, to prevent damage to geological and ecological values, and disturbance to migratory and resident birds and their habitats.
- 2.4.13 Should not authorise aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation land within this Place, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three, to prevent disturbance to migratory and resident birds, and impacts on the visitor experience.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Convention Secretariat has been completed.
- Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway has been completed.
- The Department has contributed to the development of a spartina and saltwater paspalum control programme in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Progress achieved in Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Muddy Feet Project has been reviewed with all parties.
- Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Spartina and saltwater paspalum have been reduced to a very low density or eradicated, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.
- Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway has been completed.
- Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Convention Secretariat has been completed.

## 2.5 Freshwater Wetlands Place

The Freshwater Wetlands Place includes the freshwater wetlands of the lower Waikato, Waipa and the Hauraki Plains on lands administered by the Department of Conservation (refer Maps 7.8 and 7.9, Table 2). The policy direction for this Place focuses both on sites managed by the Department and the integrated management of catchment pressures affecting the values of these freshwater wetlands.

### Description

The Freshwater Wetlands Place is important for its nationally and internationally significant wetlands, nationally threatened and endemic indigenous flora and fauna, unique vegetation, peat land and peat lake formations, game bird populations, historic, cultural and recreational values, and ecosystem services. This Place has special importance with respect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (refer section 1.6).

The abundance and diversity of freshwater ecosystems in the Waikato is unparalleled in New Zealand. Important wetland systems within Waikato Conservancy are the lower Waikato wetlands, the Waipa peat lakes and wetlands, and the Hauraki Plains wetlands. These wetland systems contain peat domes, bogs and lakes, mineralised swamps and lakes, and rivers. They evolved in response to changes in the course of the Waikato River and sediment deposits as a result of volcanic activity at Taupo. The vulnerability and continued reduction in the extent of wetland ecosystems in the Waikato is a significant issue for wetland conservation.

The lower Waikato wetlands include Whangamarino Wetland, the lower Waikato, Maramarua and Whangamarino Rivers, and a series of swamps and lakes between Huntly and Hamilton. The Department manages seven mineralised lakes, eight peat lakes and a number of other wetlands, including rare kahikatea swamp forest at Awaroa (Table 2). Most of the mineralised lakes and peat lakes are degraded. The commencement of new restoration efforts and continuation of existing projects will improve the ecological integrity and habitat quality of these wetlands.

Important features of the Hauraki Plains wetland system are the Kopuatai Peat Dome, Torehape Peat Dome, and the Piako and Waitoa Rivers. This wetland system provides diverse wetland habitats for threatened plants and wildlife, particularly rare plant communities, native fish and birdlife. The Kopuatai Peat Dome is the largest wetland in the Hauraki Plains, covering 9300 ha. The Department also administers 654 ha of the Torehape Peat Dome, the remainder of which is farmed and harvested for peat.

The Waipa peat lakes and wetlands are good examples of the wetland type, and are a rare geological feature. The Department manages 6 out of 17 of these lakes (Table 2). Although these lakes are surrounded and have been modified by intensive agricultural land use, peat values are retained and they represent the largest group of peat lakes in the country.

Priority sites for wetland ecosystem conservation within this Place are the Kopuatai Peat Dome, Torehape Peat Dome, Whangamarino Wetland, Awaroa Swamp, Lake Rotongaro, Moanatuatua peat bog, Lake Rotomanuka, Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), Lake Ohinewai, Lake Rotokawau, and the three Horsham Downs Lakes—Hotoananga, Pikopiko and Areare. Three other national priority wetland sites are located on private land.

Collectively, the freshwater wetlands in this Place are a stronghold for threatened plants and rare aquatic plant communities in the Waikato. These include plants that are specifically adapted to peat wetlands, such as the threatened swamp helmet orchid (*Anzybas carsei*) and at risk giant cane rush (*Sporadanthus ferrugineus*). Significant native bird populations are also present, including the threatened weweia/New Zealand dabchick (*Poliiocephalus rufopectus*) and matuku/Australasian bittern, and at risk mohopereru/banded rail, pūweto/

spotless crane (*Porzana tabuensis*) and mātātā/North Island fernbird. These freshwater wetlands also provide important habitat for black mudfish (*Neochanna diversus*) (at risk) and migratory fish, including galaxiids, and tuna/shortfin and longfin eels (threatened). Extensive game bird populations are also present.

Wetlands provide a number of important ecosystem services, including flood protection (water retention and increased low flows), nutrient filtering and sediment trapping. Peat bogs/domes are also important carbon sinks, as peat formation sequesters carbon. Large areas of Whangamarino Wetland and the Kopuatai Peat Dome make a significant contribution to flood protection. While artificial flood control schemes are beneficial to adjacent communities, they influence hydrological processes in ways that can adversely affect wetland ecology.

Threats to freshwater wetland ecosystems include nutrient and sediment inputs, invasive pest plants, introduced fish, introduced predators and herbivores, peat mining and shrinkage, fire, and modification of hydrological processes (e.g. drainage, flood control, water abstraction and power generation). Peat mining is an extractive activity, but research carried out by Landcare Research indicates that peat bog plant communities can be successfully restored following mining<sup>36</sup>. Such restoration techniques may also assist with the restoration of some peat bogs in this Place, e.g. Moanatuatua and Torehape.

Other management issues include fostering habitat restoration (e.g. boundary fencing, retirement of wetland margins), flora and fauna monitoring, biosecurity, unauthorised recreation structures (e.g. huts), and illegal grazing/stock trespass.

The lower Waikato wetlands and lakes are extremely important to Waikato-Tainui, particularly because of their important function and association with the health and well-being of the Waikato River. The indigenous plant and animal species found within and around wetlands are valuable cultural resources, are considered kaitiaki and are indicators of ecosystem health.

Historically, tangata whenua used wetlands extensively as sources of food and plant materials and rongoā (medicines), as transport corridors, and as places to store and preserve taonga, and to harden tools and weapons. Fishing/eeling camps, resource-gathering sites and pā were located in and around many wetland areas. Historic sites that are managed by the Department are the Falls Road Pā in Whangamarino Wetland, and the nearby Meremere Redoubt and Pā, and the Whangamarino Redoubt and Te Teo Teo Pā, both which lie outside the wetland.

The value that Waikato-Tainui hold for the Waikato River and the associated outcomes under Treaty settlement legislation, including the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the Waikato River Conservation Accord, are closely linked to the wetland systems in this Place and throughout the wider Conservancy (refer section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato). Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai Peat Dome are also of significance to Hauraki Whānui. Flora and native fisheries continue to be important cultural resources that are sourced from wetlands.

The freshwater wetlands in this Place provide a range of recreation opportunities, including game bird hunting, walking, wildlife viewing, fishing (angling and bow hunting) and water-based activities such as kayaking. These opportunities are not extensively available and public access to some wetlands is limited. Game bird hunting is popular, particularly at Whangamarino and Kopuatai. Improving general public access to the majority of lakes and wetlands on public conservation land, together with developing

---

<sup>36</sup> Schipper, L.; Clarkson, B.; Vojvodic-Vukovic, M.; Webster, R. 2002: Restoring cut-over restiad peat bogs: a factorial experiment of nutrients, seed and cultivation. *Ecological Engineering* 19: 29–40.



new recreation opportunities (e.g. kayak trails, walking tracks) would facilitate increased recreational participation. These types of recreation activities are also generally, but not always, consistent with other wetland values, and this needs to be considered as part of management programmes. Improved interpretation of the ecology, history and cultural importance of wetlands could also assist this.

Game bird hunting in Kopuatai and Whangamarino has resulted in the construction of maimai (hunting stands), ponds and some private huts (duck huts), and many ponds and private huts have been constructed illegally. Since 2002, some private huts in Whangamarino and Kopuatai have been managed under the Waikato Conservancy Private Structures Policy (2002), which facilitated their use subject to limited tenure authorisation and specific standards. However, this Policy has been superseded by the Conservation General Policy (2005). Therefore, it is the Department's intention to phase out the use of private huts within the Conservancy because their continued authorisation is inconsistent with the Conservation General Policy.

High-priority wetland values, such as peat bogs, peat lakes and kahikatea swamps, are the focus for wetland management. Beyond this, the Department is committed to protecting priority values within the other priority wetland sites listed above, and working with marae, hapū and iwi, local authorities, communities, and other organisations to meet other wetland protection and management needs.

The integrated management of catchment pressures is particularly important given the influence that surrounding catchments have on wetland quality. In this regard, the Waipa Peat Lakes and Wetlands Accord 2002 and the Waikato District Lakes and Wetlands Memorandum of Agreement 2011 are important wetland management collaborations to which the Department is a signatory.

Community restoration projects are associated with many of Waikato's freshwater wetlands. These involve marae, hapū and iwi, the public, landowners, and organisations, and contribute to riparian planting, pest plant management, and flora and fauna monitoring. Building on these efforts will be important for long-term wetland conservation.

### ***Kopuatai***

Recognised under the Ramsar Convention as a wetland of international importance for its botanical values, Kopuatai is the most intact and largest peat dome/restiad bog in the Southern Hemisphere. The peat dome is surrounded by mineralised wetland, and Kopuatai is important for maintaining genetic and ecological diversity. It supports diverse birdlife, native fish and threatened plants, including the endemic orchid *Calochilus robertsonii*, the giant wire rush (*Sporadanthus ferrugineus*) and bog clubmoss (*Lycopodiella serpentina*), as well as black mudfish and the native moth *Houdinia flexilissima*.

This wetland contains plant fossils and other evidence of geological processes, including coal formation, sea level fluctuation and climate change, which are of landscape and geological significance, and important for scientific research. The wetland and associated waterways are part of the Piako Flood Protection Scheme. Public access to the core peat bog is carefully managed to minimise impact on this sensitive ecosystem, but game bird hunting is popular within the mineralised wetlands surrounding the peat bog. Protection of the peat bog and associated values is the highest priority for Kopuatai, while maintenance of ecological and hydrological processes, flood control management, animal pest and pest plant management, livestock exclusion, and riparian planting/habitat enhancement are other important management issues.

### ***Whangamarino Wetland***

Recognised under the Ramsar Convention as a wetland of international importance for its outstanding wetland bird populations, the 7290-ha Whangamarino Wetland consists of a mosaic of wetland types, including peat bogs, fens, and mineralised swamps and rivers. It supports diverse plant life and wildlife, including an estimated 20% of the New Zealand population of matuku/Australasian bittern, unique native vegetation including the threatened bog clubmoss and swamp helmet orchid, and the at risk stout water milfoil (*Myriophyllum aquaticum*).

Whangamarino Wetland is part of the Department's national Arawai Kākāriki wetland restoration programme, which aims to maintain and enhance wetland ecosystems in an adaptive management framework. It is also of particular cultural significance to Waikato-Tainui hapū, and surrounding marae—Maurea, Horahora, Waikare, Matahuru, Taniwha-Tangoao and Okarea. Several adjoining wetland reserves are managed by the Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Council, primarily for waterfowl habitat. This wetland is also an important fishery for native and introduced fish species.

The Whangamarino Historic Walkway and the Falls Road Pā provide viewpoints from which visitors can observe the wetland landscape, and present opportunities for interpretation of the history and the natural and cultural heritage of Whangamarino Wetland.

Protection of the peat bog and associated values is the highest priority for Whangamarino Wetland. Obtaining management responsibility for the beds of the Whangamarino and Maramurua Rivers that fall within the boundary of the wetland would enable better integrated management of the wetland. The Department uses selective burning as a management tool in Whangamarino Wetland to protect the habitat of the threatened swamp helmet orchid. Other key management issues are:

- Protecting and maintaining water quality and hydrological processes (especially with respect to the impact of the Lower Waikato Flood Protection Scheme, which includes a large part of the wetland)
- Controlling pest plants and animals
- Managing recreation opportunities that are consistent with ecosystem priorities, and working with the community, iwi and other agencies to encourage involvement in restoration of the wetland
- Adopting land management practices on private land that complement the management and restoration of this site.

### ***Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)***

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) is a small complex of three significant peat lakes that formed from a single lake when surrounding land was drained for agricultural use. Although modified, the lakes are significant for the presence of relatively intact native vegetation communities, including the threatened water brome (*Amphibromus fluitans*). These lakes have the highest water quality of all the Waipa peat lakes that are administered by the Department. Picnicking and walking opportunities are available at the East Lake, and the site also supports cultural harakeke/New Zealand flax (*Phormium tenax*) harvest by local marae, hapū and iwi.

Key management issues are pest plant invasion, impacts of introduced fish, peat shrinkage, water quality and achieving consistent management with the large areas of adjoining reserve administered by Waipa District Council. Their proximity to State Highway 3 and several population centres presents an opportunity to improve awareness of wetland values.

A national wetland interpretation centre showcasing New Zealand wetlands has been proposed at the East Lake by the National Wetland Trust.

### *Lake Rotomanuka*

Lake Rotomanuka is another peat lake that supports important aquatic native plant communities, including the threatened yellow bladderwort (*Urticularia australis*), and native fish populations. In places, the lake is surrounded by thick peat. The lake margin is accessible by foot, but recreation opportunities are limited. The management of introduced fish, pest plants, peat shrinkage and water quality are priorities.

Table 2. Key wetlands administered by the Department of Conservation in the Waikato, Waipa and Hauraki Districts.

LOWER WAIKATO WETLANDS AND LAKES:	WETLAND TYPE:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Whangamarino Wetland</li> </ul>	Peat bog, mineralised swamp, river
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lakes Rotongaro, Rotongaroiti, Okowhao, Kimihia, Hakanoa and Whangape, and Awaroa Swamp</li> </ul>	Lake and marginal swamps
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lake Ohinewai, Lake Rotokawau and associated reserve, and Horsham Downs Lakes (Hotoananga, Pikopiko, Areare, Komakorau (C), Kaituna (B) and Hurrells (E))</li> </ul>	Peat lake, peatland, some mineralised swamp
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Opuatia</li> </ul>	Mineralised swamp
HAURAKI PLAINS WETLANDS AND LAKES:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Torehape Peat Dome</li> </ul>	Peat bog, marginal swamps
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Kopuatai Peat Dome and adjoining wetland reserves and marginal strips</li> </ul>	River margins, mineralised swamps
WAIPA PEAT LAKES AND WETLANDS:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lakes Koromatua, Rotopotaka, Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), Rotomanuka, Ruatuna and Ngarotoiti</li> </ul>	Peat lake and margins
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Moanatuatua peat bog</li> </ul>	Peat bog

Adapted from Champion, P.D. 1997: An overview of the Lower Waikato/Hauraki Plans Wetlands and issues relating to their management. Prepared for the Department of Conservation. NIWA Consultancy Report DOC80216, Hamilton, New Zealand.

## Outcome, policies and milestones for the Freshwater Wetlands Place

### OUTCOME

The lower Waikato, Waipa and Hauraki Plains are recognised for their diversity and range of wetland habitats, and complex hydrological systems. The internationally significant wetlands of Kopuatai and Whangamarino are a success story, modelling best practice wetland protection and restoration, and, along with other priority and associated wetlands, are in a healthy functioning state. Restoration of Moanatuatua and Torehape peat bogs has commenced, including the re-establishment of vegetation communities and ecologically sustainable hydrological processes.

Other wetlands are maintained and restored to ensure no further loss or degradation in collaboration with iwi, local authorities and other organisations. Populations of indigenous wetland flora and fauna, native fisheries, and nationally threatened species such as the matuku/Australasian bittern are thriving. Game bird populations are managed to avoid adverse effects on indigenous ecosystems and species.

The restoration of wetland sites and partnerships with iwi and other agencies within the Waikato River catchment have contributed towards achieving the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River—to restore its health and well-being for future generations. Positive working relationships with Waikato-Tainui and Hauraki Whānui foster the collaborative management of wetland values of common interest. Cultural practices and Waikato mātauranga o nga reporepo (local knowledge regarding wetlands) is recognised and supported. Kaitiakitanga is actively practiced by hau kāinga and is supported as part of wetland management and advocacy.

Threats are managed to improve ecosystem function and natural character. Pest fish are contracting in their range and have been eradicated from priority sites. The wetlands are free of pigs and deer, and stock is excluded from vulnerable areas. Other introduced mammals are reduced in abundance, with assistance from marae, hapū and iwi, communities, and other interested parties.

Research and monitoring informs the effective management of wetland species and ecosystems.

Integrated catchment management contributes to improved wetland functioning and health. Wetland management agreements foster collaboration between landowners, local authorities, marae, hapū and iwi, communities, the Department, and Fish and Game New Zealand.

Sedimentation and nutrient inputs to wetlands have reduced. Wetland margins on public conservation land provide a buffer between wetlands and surrounding land uses, and the extent of wetland buffers on privately owned wetland margins has increased.

Highly valued sites that are associated with the cultural and historic use of wetlands, such as pā, are protected and their stories are shared in collaboration with marae, hapū and iwi, and other agencies.

Wetlands are destinations that are highly valued by the local community and in which recreation activities are undertaken in harmony with ecological values. Visitors experience and enjoy wetlands through a range of passive and active recreational pursuits, including walking and kayaking, and visiting well-interpreted sites. The visitor experiences a sense of appreciation for wetlands, and leaves with a greater understanding of wetland ecology, cultural values and history. Quality facilities and increased foot access to wetlands enhance these experiences. Wetlands provide peaceful settings, with only occasional intrusion from motorised watercraft or aircraft (apart from immediately before and during the game

bird hunting season, when the use of motorised watercraft may be more frequent). Game bird hunting largely occurs away from the most popular recreation sites, with encounters most likely during the opening of the game bird hunting season. Structures are located unobtrusively in the landscape and are sited away from ecologically sensitive sites.

People understand and appreciate the unique values and ecosystem services associated with wetlands. They hold a sense of ownership for wetlands, and contribute to wetland management and restoration by leading local wetland restoration projects. Events celebrating wetland conservation, such as World Wetland Day, are well attended and facilitate increased participation in wetland conservation.

### ***Kopuatai***

Kopuatai is valued nationally as a natural landscape feature and internationally for its biodiversity values, which are protected and enhanced above other values and uses. Research has improved understanding about wetland ecosystem functioning, while minimising adverse effects on the sensitive peat bog. Recreation activities are centred on mineralised wetland areas. Access to the wetland is provided at selected locations to protect the sensitive peat bog ecosystem. The management of hydrological systems, including flood control, has a positive or neutral effect on ecological values.

### ***Whangamarino Wetland***

Whangamarino Wetland is internationally significant and renowned for on-site wetland research-by-management and restoration. Wetland birdlife and native plant communities are diverse, well managed and increasing. The nationally significant populations of the threatened swamp helmet orchid and matuku/Australasian bittern are thriving. The management of hydrological systems, including for flood control, enhances or has a neutral effect on ecosystem functioning. Popular coarse fishing opportunities help to benefit wetland restoration, and culturally important fish and plant species, such as tuna/eel, are thriving.

Knowledge gained from the Arawai Kākāriki Wetland Restoration Project has advanced the management and restoration of this wetland, and increased community involvement and understanding of wetland values. Visitors enjoy diverse recreation opportunities and improved access to the wetland, and information about wetland values is readily available. The locally treasured Te Teo Teo Pā and Meremere Pā are actively conserved, with Te Teo Teo Pā a part of the Whangamarino Historic Walkway. Visitors enjoy the wetland scenery and learn about its history and natural values at Te Teo Teo Pā and Falls Road Pā.

### ***Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)***

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) is a national priority ecosystem site for peat wetland and threatened plant conservation, and a striking natural landscape feature. Ecological integrity is improving, and threatened plant populations, including the water brome, are restored and native plant communities are recovering. Invasive plants and impacts from surrounding land use are significantly reduced, and introduced pest fish are eradicated. Local iwi undertake ecologically sustainable cultural harvest of harakeke/New Zealand flax. Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) is an accessible place for experiencing and learning about wetlands. Recreational experiences centre on short walks, which have interpretation of wetland biodiversity and cultural values. The management of wetland values and recreation opportunities is coordinated with Waipa District Council. Any structures blend into the landscape.

### *Lake Rotomanuka*

Lake Rotomanuka is a healthy example of a peat lake ecosystem. Native fish and aquatic vegetation, including the nationally threatened yellow bladderwort, are increasing, and riparian vegetation communities are restored.

#### **POLICIES**

- 2.5.1 Implement the mechanisms outlined in the Waikato River Conservation Accord and its implementation strategy as they apply to this Place, in accordance with the objectives in section 1.6 (Part One) of this CMS, to achieve the Vision and Strategy to restore and protect the health and well-being of the Waikato River.
- 2.5.2 Advocate to reduce the impact of catchment-wide pressures on wetland values, particularly with respect to:
  - a) sediment and nutrient inputs;
  - b) hydrological processes;
  - c) stock encroachment; and
  - d) pest plants and animals.
- 2.5.3 Develop integrated operational management programmes for Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai, in line with ecosystem restoration priorities.
- 2.5.4 Develop ecosystem restoration programmes for Lake Rotomanuka, Moanatuatua peat bog and Torehape peat bog, in line with ecosystem restoration priorities.
- 2.5.5 Identify priority wetland restoration projects that marae, hapū and iwi, communities, business, and other interested parties can collaborate on or lead.
- 2.5.6 Undertake a cultural assessment to identify significant cultural sites at wetlands in collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi, and provide for the protection, use, access to and enhancement of those sites, as specified in Treaty settlement legislation, the Waikato River Conservation Accord and Conservation Accord Implementation Strategy, and any other Treaty settlement mechanisms.
- 2.5.7 Undertake an assessment of taonga species within wetland sites in collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi, to enable more effective planning for their management and protection.
- 2.5.8 Seek transfer of the administration responsibilities for the bed of the Whangamarino and Maramarua Rivers within Whangamarino Wetland from Land Information New Zealand to the Department, to enable their management as part of the wetland reserve.
- 2.5.9 Seek formal agreements or collaborative initiatives, such as Memoranda of Understanding (MOUs), with Waikato Regional Council in relation to the management of flood control schemes on the Piako River and Lower Waikato River System, to reduce the ecological effects of those schemes on affected wetlands.
- 2.5.10 Retire public conservation land in and around the wetlands from grazing as concessions expire, and consider purchasing private land in and around the wetlands, to protect wetland ecosystems and values.

- 2.5.11 Should not authorise the construction of ponds for the creation of game bird habitat in sensitive wetlands, particularly in peat bogs, to allow the wetlands to function in their natural state and retain natural character.
- 2.5.12 Seek removal of all unauthorised private accommodation, including private huts (duck huts) and encampments, from public conservation land within this Place, in accordance with Policies 3.10.2 and 3.10.7 in Part Three.
- 2.5.13 Manage authorised private accommodation, including authorised private huts (duck huts) and encampments, on public conservation land within this Place in accordance with Policies 3.10.2 to 3.10.7 in Part Three.
- 2.5.14 Advocate for the exclusion of motorised watercraft use on Lakes Rotokawau, Ohinewai, Kimihia, Okowhao, Koromatua, Rotopotaka, Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), Rotomanuka, Ruatuna and Ngarotoiti, and the Horsham Downs Lakes (except Hurrells Lake—refer Policy 2.5.15) to protect wildlife habitat and indigenous species.
- 2.5.15 Should not allow motorised watercraft use on Lake Hakanoa Wildlife Refuge Reserve and Hurrells Lake Wildlife Refuge Reserve, to protect wildlife habitat and indigenous species.
- 2.5.16 May seek restrictions and conditions on the use of watercraft on public conservation lands and waters in this Place, to protect wildlife habitat and indigenous species.
- 2.5.17 Advocate for limited motorised watercraft use on other public conservation lands and waters in this Place and seek consideration of motorised watercraft use on the following basis:
  - a) that it be for recreation use only, including for the provision of support vessels at special events;
  - b) in the case of recreation access, that it be for recreation access to sites that would otherwise be inaccessible by other means; and
  - c) that wake and noise are minimised, particularly close to sensitive wildlife habitat.
- 2.5.18 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs within Moanatuatua Peat Scientific Reserve, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three, to protect the sensitive ecosystem values.
- 2.5.19 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs at other wetlands within this Place, as shown on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2, 3.5.4, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three, with particular regard to maintaining the peaceful nature of the wetlands outside the game bird hunting season.
- 2.5.20 May allow peat mining at Moanatuatua Peat Scientific Reserve and Torehape Wetland Management Reserve for the purposes of wetland restoration, provided that:
  - a) the activity is demonstrated to achieve wetland restoration outcomes for the site and is consistent with any restoration programme developed for Torehape or Moanatuatua peat bogs;
  - b) impacts on threatened and at risk species are avoided or minimised;
  - c) the peat mining and restoration techniques used are scientifically proven to achieve restoration of the site;



- d) natural hydrological processes are re-established; and
- e) indigenous peat bog vegetation communities are reinstated, and subsequent monitoring demonstrates successful reestablishment of that vegetation community.

#### ***Whangamarino Wetland***

- 2.5.21 Use selective burning as a management tool in Whangamarino Wetland, to protect the habitat of the threatened swamp helmet orchid.

#### **Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)**

- 2.5.22 Work cooperatively with Waipa District Council and the National Wetland Trust in respect of the National Wetland Centre initiative proposed for Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko).
- 2.5.23 Consider, in conjunction with Waipa District Council, reclassification of public conservation land and adjoining land administered by Waipa District Council at Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) to create a uniform legal status across the wetland, e.g. wildlife management reserve, and implement any agreed changes to legal status to enable integrated management of the natural, cultural and recreational values of Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko).
- 2.5.24 May authorise structures in Lake Serpentine Wildlife Management Reserve for a National Wetland Centre, in accordance with the criteria in Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three, provided that:
- a) impacts on hydrological processes and wetland flora and fauna are minimised;
  - b) structures, including buildings, are of a size, scale and design that is in keeping with the setting and surrounding landscape;
  - c) buildings are only located on modified areas; and
  - d) the goods and services provided relate to the appreciation of wetlands and the Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), and complement the visitor experience.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem site work programmes for the priority ecosystem sites in this Place has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway in this Place has been completed.
- Integrated operational management programmes for Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai have been developed in line with priority ecosystem site work programmes and implementation has commenced.
- Review of the Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) Restoration Plan has been completed in line with priority ecosystem site work programmes.
- Three-yearly report to Ramsar Secretariat on progress and achievements at Whangamarino and Kopuatai wetlands has been completed.
- At least one formal collaborative initiative, e.g. MOU, has been developed with iwi, communities or business for the restoration of wetlands, particularly at priority ecosystem sites.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Restoration programme for Lake Rotomanuka has been developed in line with priority ecosystem site work programmes.
- Riverbeds within Whangamarino Wetland have been gazetted from Land Information New Zealand to the Department.
- Stock has been excluded from vulnerable areas of Whangamarino Wetland.
- The formal process for gazetting wetland areas from Land Information New Zealand to the Department has been completed.
- Introduced fish species (rudd (*Scardinius erythrophthalmus*), goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) and catfish (*Ameiurus nebulosus*)) have been controlled to low densities and/or eradicated from Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko).
- Unauthorised private accommodation has been removed from this Place.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Restoration of Torehape and Moanatuatua peat bogs has commenced.
- Stock has been excluded from all riparian and other sensitive freshwater ecosystems on public conservation lands within this Place.
- Formed public foot access has been developed to inaccessible wetlands on public conservation land, particularly Lake Rotongaro and selected sited at Kopuatai.

## 2.6 Karioi to Whareorino Place

The Karioi to Whareorino Place covers an area from Raglan to Awakino, and encompasses Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain, Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls, Te Kauri Park, Tawarau Forest and the Herangi Range (refer Maps 7.10 and 7.11). The policy direction for this Place focuses on land managed by the Department, as well as integrated management of the values and pressures originating off public conservation lands.

This Place includes four discrete areas, each with specific management needs:

- Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge
- Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls
- Pirongia Mountain
- Te Kauri-Tawarau-Whareorino.

### Description

The Karioi to Whareorino Place is valued as a large, though fragmented, indigenous forest corridor. It harbours threatened flora and fauna, a diverse cultural history, and many recreation opportunities. This Place also has significant geological features and landscapes, including internationally renowned karst features and an outstanding coastal volcanic landscape.

This Place is characterised by widespread pastoral farming and rugged hill country catchments that drain to the west coast and inland Waikato. Large blocks of protected indigenous forest include Pirongia Forest Park, Tawarau Conservation Area and Whareorino Forest. The indigenous forest corridor is important for species dispersal, and provides a range of ecosystem services, particularly water and soil conservation, water supply, flood mitigation, and carbon sequestration. Indigenous forests in private ownership link protected areas along this forest corridor, the retention of which is a conservancy priority.

Ecosystem types include coastal broadleaf forest, podocarp-broadleaf forest, kauri, montane forest, subalpine bogs and karst systems. Mt Karioi and the Whareorino-Moeatoa area feature intact coastal to montane vegetation sequences to altitudes of 700–800 m. The Department has identified five priority ecosystem sites within this Place—Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain, Te Kauri, Lake Koraha and Whareorino.

The native fauna includes a diverse forest avifauna, several species of lizard, the pekapeka/long-tailed bat, two species of native frogs, and invertebrates. Threatened plant species include *Dactylanthus taylorii*, *Hebe scopulorum* and species that are specifically adapted to karst environments. Waterways support significant native fisheries, including the at risk tuna/longfin eel and shortjaw kōkopu. Several rivers and streams, notably Te Toto Stream, Waiharakeke Stream, and the Awakino, Awaroa and Tawarau Rivers, provide important habitats for native fish. Improving indigenous forest health and the integrity of priority ecosystems, and protecting important populations of threatened and at risk species are management priorities.

Possum and goat control is undertaken across many areas within this Place to maintain and improve forest health. Deer are another significant threat to forest health, and so preventing the establishment of wild populations is a priority. Targeted predator control is undertaken to protect threatened species, and commercial possum trapping and recreational hunting also contribute to animal threat management. Management challenges include sustaining threat management programmes, and preventing the illegal release of wild animals (particularly deer), illegal timber harvesting and unauthorised livestock grazing.

Many significant natural landforms, geological features and landscapes are present, including volcanic cones, karst and fossil deposits. These provide evidence of a varied geological history, and have high aesthetic, recreation and tourism value. Therefore, protecting these features is integral to the character of this Place.

This Place, along with the Waitomo Place, includes one of New Zealand's three major karst areas—Maniapoto karst, which extends south from Pirongia into northern Taranaki. Karst is generally under-represented on public conservation lands, particularly in the North Island, and consequently the protection of karst features on private land was identified as a government priority in 2007<sup>37</sup>. Many cave systems in this Place are found on private land, which places pressure on the use of caves located on public conservation land.

This Place has a diverse heritage and many significant cultural and historical sites, reflecting a long history of Māori occupation and subsequent colonial settlement. It crosses the rohe of both Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto, who hold strong cultural associations with the area. Archaeological values include numerous pā, middens, urupā (burial sites), food pits and battle sites. The Department intends to build on positive working relationships with Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto to enhance cultural heritage management and protection. The Department manages one significant historic site within this Place, a European soldiers grave at Pirongia.

Recreation opportunities include tramping, walking, picnicking, fishing, climbing, caving, mountain biking and hunting. Supported by numerous facilities and tracks, walking and tramping are the most widely available activities. Cave tourism and exploration is centred at Waitomo (refer section 2.7: Waitomo Place).

Te Araroa—The Long Pathway traverses Pirongia Mountain and other public land to the south. Mountain biking, family-friendly recreation opportunities, short walks and accessible backcountry areas are in demand. The Department intends to manage opportunities and facilities in line with demand and use, and to minimise conflict between user groups. Assistance from the community and other interested parties would facilitate the provision of new recreation opportunities.

Concession activity within this Place includes flora collection, controlled livestock grazing, aircraft landing, outdoor education events, one-off recreation events and scientific research.

Integrated catchment management is important for maintaining ecosystem health and associated ecosystem services, such as providing drinking water. Iwi, local authorities, other land managers, communities and other organisations all contribute to this alongside the Department. Coordinated management efforts include animal pest control programmes, tree and riparian planting, species monitoring and survey, and advocacy. Seeking the involvement of new parties, particularly in animal pest control, will build on these collaborations.

The Department's advocacy priorities for this Place are the maintenance and protection of:

- Priority ecosystems
- Threatened and at risk species
- Ecological corridors
- Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes.

---

<sup>37</sup> Ministry for the Environment 2007: Protecting Our Places: information about the Statement of National Priorities for Protecting Rare and Threatened Biodiversity on Private Land. Publication number: ME 805. Ministry for the Environment, Wellington, New Zealand.

### ***Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge***

The ancient volcano of Mt Karioi (765 m above sea level (a.s.l.)) and the volcanic amphitheatre of Te Toto Gorge are important features of this coastal section of Pirongia Forest Park and the adjoining Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve. The coastal to montane vegetation sequence that covers most of this area includes rare coastal broadleaf forest and has been identified as a priority ecosystem site for the Department. These important forests provide the water supply for Raglan. Goat and possum control on public and private land has substantially improved forest condition, and the threatened *Hebe speciosa* and Cook's scurvy grass (*Lepidium oleracium*) have been successfully reintroduced to Te Toto Gorge. Several community groups are leading an ecosystem restoration project that could expand into more areas of private and public land on Mt Karioi.

Mt Karioi and the Te Toto Gorge coastline form part of an outstanding coastal landscape of high scenic and aesthetic value. The Te Toto Gorge volcanic amphitheatre is a nationally significant geological feature. A telecommunication structure, which supports telecommunications and search and rescue, is present on Mt Karioi. Maintaining the natural form of these landscapes and geological features by keeping them free from any new structures is a priority.

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve are significant cultural landscapes that are of great value to Waikato-Tainui. Mt Karioi is a culturally important tribal landmark and Te Toto Gorge, which was once an important occupation and agricultural area, includes many archaeological sites. Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve offers significant historic and cultural interpretation opportunities; however, the provision of public access to Te Toto Gorge is a matter of great sensitivity for iwi.

Close working relationships with Waikato-Tainui are necessary to facilitate protection, management and interpretation of cultural sites and values.

Recreation opportunities centre on appreciation of the coastal scenery and forests. Facilities include a viewing platform overlooking Te Toto Gorge and the Karioi and Wairake Tracks on Mt Karioi. The Department would like to provide recreation and cultural interpretation opportunities within Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve, such as a coastal track. This would most likely occur outside Te Toto Gorge itself, however, to respect the cultural sensitivity of the area. Other potential opportunities include linking Mt Karioi with Raglan township and Mt Karioi with Papanui Point, in collaboration with interested parties.

### ***Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls***

The 220-ha Wairēinga Scenic Reserve is dissected by an escarpment that has a spectacular 55-m single-drop waterfall flowing over rock of volcanic origin. The reserve is covered with tawa-dominated forest and is important to Waikato tourism, attracting 50 000 visitors each year. Iwi have a close spiritual connection with Wairēinga, which is associated with spirits and kaitiaki known as patupaiarehe (fairies).

The waterfall is a significant geological and scenic feature, and supports unique and fragile ecological values. Habitats within the splash zone of the waterfall are very sensitive to disturbance from human activities. The threatened orchid *Corybas* "Kaitarakihi" (*Corybas* aff. *rivularis*) is found only within the splash zone of the falls and other as yet undiscovered species could also be present. The Department is working with local authorities and landowners upstream of the reserve to improve water quality of the Pakoka River and water clarity at the falls.

The wheelchair-accessible track, viewing platforms and associated facilities enable a wide range of visitors to enjoy the waterfall, and hunters also use the reserve. Therefore, the Department intends to minimise interactions and potential conflict between visitors and

hunters. Abseiling off the escarpment has been a popular activity in the past; however, significant impacts on the fragile ecosystem led to closure of the area to this activity. The Department intends to keep Wairēinga closed to abseiling to protect it from the impacts of this activity and out of respect for cultural values.

The car park is located on a road reserve, which influences the size and scale of visitor facilities available. The Department works with Waikato District Council to maintain these visitor facilities. Given the high level of visitation, the car park also has potential for limited business opportunities.

Protection of the waterfall, its associated ecology and cultural associations, and provision for visitor access are management priorities for Wairēinga.

### ***Pirongia Mountain***

Pirongia Mountain (959 m a.s.l.) is a prominent volcanic cone that is covered with a forest sequence of lowland podocarp-broadleaf to montane forest. It is the highest volcano in the western Waikato and a nationally significant landform and landscape.

A large proportion of the forests on Pirongia have been identified as a priority ecosystem site by the Department. Notable flora includes rare kaikawaka/New Zealand cedar (*Libocedrus plumosa*) forest at higher altitudes and the threatened *Dactylanthus taylorii*. The threatened kāeāea/New Zealand falcon and pekapeka/long-tailed bat are also present, along with at risk tuna/longfin eel and shortjaw kōkopu, for which the Mangakara Stream is a stronghold. Threatened species that are no longer present include brown kiwi, North Island kōkako and whio/blue duck. Fencing and goat and possum control, which are carried out collaboratively with Waikato Regional Council, have improved forest condition. These forests provide the source for the Pirongia Village and Te Awamutu water supplies.

Pirongia Mountain was once an important hunting ground for Māori. It is a culturally important tribal landmark of great significance to Waikato-Tainui. The eastern slopes of the mountain are part of the Waipa River and Waikato River catchment, and are therefore subject to the Waikato River and Waipa River Treaty settlements (refer sections 1.4 and 1.6).

There is strong community involvement in conservation management at Pirongia Mountain. Community-led stream corridor restoration along the Kaniwhaniwha Stream and predator control on the mountain have contributed to improved ecosystem health and benefited fish and bird populations. The community is also involved with species monitoring and reintroductions. Extending community-led threat management and riparian revegetation beyond the park boundary could expand wildlife corridors and reduce further habitat fragmentation.

Pirongia Mountain provides a range of recreation opportunities close to Hamilton City. These include short walks, day and overnight tramps, hunting, trout fishing, and opportunities for family-orientated mountain biking and camping. Popular destinations include the Mangakara Walk, Nikau Walk, Kaniwhaniwha campsite and Pahautea Hut. The Pirongia Forest Park Lodge has a concession to operate an outdoor education facility that provides overnight accommodation within the Park. Te Araroa traverses the Park and provides additional walking opportunities, and the Pipiwharau Trail (to the north of the Park), provides additional walking and cycling opportunities outside the Park.

The proximity of the Park to urban Waikato increases pressure on recreational facilities and demand for a wider range of opportunities. Therefore, the provision of easily accessible recreation opportunities that cater for a wide range of users is a priority for Pirongia. Options to facilitate this include increasing hut capacity, shared use of tracks and seeking community contribution to create new recreation opportunities. Potential also exists to enhance recreational links with the Te Araroa—The Long Pathway route between Pirongia

Mountain and Hamilton City, in collaboration with the Te Araroa Trust, landowners and local authorities.

### *Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino*

Te Kauri Park, Tawarau Forest and Whareorino Forest are forested conservation areas that dominate the western highlands of the King Country. The highest point is Maungamangero (806 m a.s.l.) in the Herangi Range of Whareorino Forest. Between these larger blocks of public conservation land is a mixture of farmland, smaller conservation areas, e.g. Awaroa, Hauturu and Taumatotara, and privately owned native forests. Collectively, these forests form a large proportion of the indigenous forest corridor spanning this Place. This area also includes a large part of the Maniapoto karst region.

Most conservation land in the area is covered in podocarp-broadleaf forest. A number of the forests on conservation land have important ecological features:

- Kauri-podocarp-broadleaf forest is at its southern limit in Te Kauri Park
- Cold montane forest and subalpine cushion bog are found at higher altitudes in Whareorino Forest
- Mild coastal forest occurs in the Moeatoa-Waikawau area
- There is an intact coastal montane sequence at Moeatoa-Whareorino
- Karst has intact native forest cover at Tawarau Forest—the largest such area in the North Island.

Te Kauri, Whareorino and Moeatoa have been identified as priority ecosystem sites by the Department.

The overall vegetation condition of the main forests has improved as a result of regular possum and goat control since the early 1990s. The slow spread of red deer (*Cervus elaphus*) populations is a key threat to these forests, however, and kauri dieback disease, while not present, is also a threat to the forests at Te Kauri Park. The fragmented nature of the conservation land and large tracts of private forest makes community support and collaborative approaches to animal pest control particularly important for improving forest health and habitat connectivity in this area. Furthermore, having consistent legal status for this network of protected forest areas would aid management of priority values.

The native fauna includes nationally important populations of the threatened Archey's frog and at risk Hochstetter's frog at Whareorino, and pekapeka/long-tailed bat populations. The threatened kāēaea/New Zealand falcon, North Island kākā and remnant populations of western brown kiwi are also present. The freshwater fish fauna of the area is very diverse, particularly in the Awakino catchment and the short coastal streams draining west from Whareorino. Many of these streams are in good condition and have few barriers to native fish movement. Threatened plants include the coastal forget-me-not *Myosotis petiolata* var. *pansa*, king fern (*Ptisana salicina*), and occasional *Dactylanthus taylorii*. The Awaroa hebe is found only on a few high limestone outcrops between Kawhia Harbour and Tawarau, and is endemic to the Waikato.

A number of remote karst features of geological significance occur through the area, complementing those in the Waitomo Place. These include caves, blind valleys, gorges, bluffs and sculpted rock outcrops, which host specially adapted flora and fauna. In Tawarau Forest, karst features are seldom visited and are a rare North Island example of relatively pristine caves with intact biological and physical catchments. Karst landscapes also occur on conservation land in the Taumatotara Range and Mahoe Forest. Lake Koraha is a unique example of a lake in a karst depression within an intact native forest catchment



and has been identified as a priority ecosystem site for the Department. The Karst Management Guidelines (1999)<sup>38</sup> set out the Department's broad policies and actions for the management and protection of karst values on public conservation land. This document will guide management of karst values within this Place and the Waitomo Place (refer section 2.7).

Tangata whenua have a special relationship with the land, including Te Kauri Park, karst areas and the Herangi Range. Collaborative partnerships with Ngāti Maniapoto Regional Management Committees, marae and hapū and Waikato-Tainui will help ensure appropriate management of cultural values and the protection of wāhi tapu.

Recreation activities in the area include hunting, backcountry tramping and trout fishing. Some mountain biking, wild caving and occasional kayaking (at Tawarau) also occurs. The Tawarau River / Mangaohae Stream and Awakino River are valued for trout fishing. Day walk tramping occurs at Te Kauri and Tawarau, while south Whareorino Forest has a network of tracks and a 16-bunk hut at Leitch's Clearing. As a biosecurity measure to protect critically endangered native species, the Department may seek legal mechanisms to periodically restrict public access to northern Whareorino Forest to facilitate its management. Maintaining backcountry access, and providing walking, mountain biking and overnight opportunities are recreation priorities for this area.

The Department has partnered with Waikato Regional Council to manage animal pests in many forest catchments between Marakopa and Awakino, including Whareorino Forest. Community conservation initiatives are particularly active at Te Kauri Park, and other community initiatives include community possum control schemes and western brown kiwi surveys. Encouraging community-led conservation initiatives at other sites will be important for long-term conservation gains. The challenge arising is the small population base and having sufficient community resources to assist with conservation outcomes.

## Outcome, policies and milestones for the Karioi to Whareorino Place

### OUTCOME

The Karioi to Whareorino Place is treasured for its diverse forest ecosystems and habitats, mountain to sea landscapes, unique karst features, and diverse cultural history. It is cherished by communities and visitors alike.

The indigenous forest corridor spanning the length of this Place, including mountain to sea vegetation sequences, is retained, and forest health and connectivity is improving. Priority ecosystems, and threatened and at risk species are thriving. Streams and rivers are protected and enhanced in collaboration with the community; in particular, fish passage is maintained. Scientific research contributes to increased understanding of ecosystem function and threatened species management across this Place.

Catchment-scale animal pest control protects ecological values at priority sites. Priority animal threats, particularly possums and goats, are managed to low densities in collaboration with local authorities, commercial and recreational hunters, and the community. Public conservation lands are free of deer and livestock are excluded from sensitive sites.

<sup>38</sup> Department of Conservation 1999: Karst management guidelines: policies and actions. Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

Natural character and distinctive forest, coastal, volcanic and karst landscapes prevail, and associated natural features are intact and appreciated.

Sites and stories of historical and cultural significance are brought to life. Māori cultural heritage is protected and interpreted at key sites in collaboration with iwi, and as a result of positive working relationships with Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto.

Visitors are attracted to the diverse recreation opportunities available. A range of accessible front and backcountry opportunities is available at Mt Karioi, Te Toto, Pirongia Mountain and Wairēnga/Bridal Veil Falls. Opportunities with basic facilities are found at more isolated destinations within this Place, such as Whareorino Forest. Visitors to the backcountry can generally access these areas by foot from nearby road ends and can expect only occasional encounters with aircraft. New recreation opportunities service community needs, and are developed in collaboration with user groups, local authorities, iwi, communities and concessionaires. Understanding and appreciation of natural and cultural heritage is integral to the visitor experience.

The Department advocates for integrated catchment management, and the protection of significant landscapes, landforms and features, and priority habitats and species. Development and resource use has minimal impacts on significant ecological, cultural and geological values.

Motivated communities and interested organisations play a significant role in achieving conservation priorities, including catchment-scale forest, stream corridor and marine restoration, and threatened species recovery. Concessionaire use complements natural and cultural values, enhances knowledge of these values, and contributes to the provision of additional visitor experiences and opportunities.

### ***Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge***

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge are renowned volcanic landscapes with significant natural and cultural heritage values.

This priority coastal to montane forest sequence is thriving and Te Toto Gorge remains a safe haven for threatened coastal plants such as Cook's scurvy grass. The Department is working alongside the community, iwi and other agencies to enhance the forest ecosystem and protect native wildlife on Mt Karioi. The mountain to sea landscape prevails, with the Karioi skyline and geological landforms free from new structures.

Cultural values prevail in Te Toto Gorge and the mauri of Karioi is enhanced.

Visitors enjoy undeveloped coastal scenery, cultural history, indigenous forest and volcanic landforms, and experience a peaceful forest setting on Karioi. Visitors can expect little or no encounters with aircraft at high elevations out of respect for cultural values, and only occasional encounters elsewhere. New recreation opportunities, possibly including a link track between Mt Karioi and Raglan township, and Mt Karioi and Papanui Point, are developed in collaboration with iwi, the community, landowners and interested parties.

### ***Wairēnga/Bridal Veil Falls***

The popular tourist destination of Wairēnga is retained in its natural form and setting. Fragile ecological values at the falls are protected from adverse impacts. Clear and clean water flows over the falls as a result of improved fencing of the reserve, sustainable land management practices and restoration of the river corridor upstream of the reserve.

Cultural values and associations are respected and managed in close collaboration with iwi.

Visitors experience an accessible and easy bush walk to the falls. They expect little or no encounters with aircraft and infrequent encounters with hunters, who use alternative access to the reserve. Quality facilities provide safe viewing opportunities from above and below the falls. Abseiling does not occur within the reserve, to protect fragile threatened plants. A cultural journey is an integral part of the visitor experience. Visitor facilities and commercial activities at the car park are managed in partnership with Waikato District Council.

### ***Pirongia Mountain***

Pirongia Mountain is a renowned landmark where biodiversity values prevail and are flourishing, including the priority lowland to montane forest sequence and the threatened *Dactylanthus taylorii* and pekapeka/long-tailed bat. Community-led threat management and riparian revegetation contributes to improved ecosystem functioning and protection of indigenous species. Native species are being returned through community-led reintroductions.

The forested landform of Pirongia and its panoramic skyline remain untouched and intact. The mauri and cultural associations of Pirongia are protected in partnership with iwi and local communities. The healthy Pirongia Forest catchment contributes to the restoration and maintenance of the Waipa and Waikato Rivers, and the achievement of the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwaiā (the essence and well-being of the Waipa River).

Pirongia Mountain is well known for its many recreation opportunities and is a highlight along Te Araroa. People make the most of easily accessible short bush walks, and day and overnight tramps. Visitors enjoy natural quiet in backcountry areas of the Park, and at high elevations can expect few or no encounters with aircraft out of respect for cultural values. A larger Pahautea Hut means that more people, especially family and school groups, are enjoying overnights stays. Managed as a Gateway Destination, the Kaniwhaniwha area is a multi-use area for family-friendly walking, mountain biking and camping. Hunters access the Park using low-use tracks and are rarely encountered by visitors on popular tracks, such as the Mangakara Walk. Potential for new mountain biking and walking opportunities within and linking to the Park is realised in collaboration with users, the community and interested organisations.

### ***Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino***

Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino is valued for its biodiversity and significant karst geology.

Important ecosystem features, such as karst, and priority ecosystem sites at Te Kauri Park, Tawarau, Lake Koraha, and Whareorino are thriving. The montane to sea sequence of forests and waterways at Whareorino–Moeatoa are secure and improving in condition. Populations of the threatened pekapeka/long-tailed bat and Archey’s frog, and the at risk Hochstetter’s frog are increasing in their range. Unique and endemic karst flora is flourishing, especially the threatened Awaroa hebe and forget-me-not (*Myosotis petiolata* var. *pansa*).

The natural form and skyline of the Herangi Range prevails. Karst systems in Tawarau Forest are preserved, with intact forest cover. Low visitor numbers mean that impacts on these sensitive cave systems are negligible.

Cultural taonga, values and sites, such as Te Kauri Park, karst and the Herangi Range, are protected and interpreted in collaboration with Waikato-Tainui, and Ngāti Maniapoto Regional Management Committees, marae and hapū.

Front country and backcountry recreation opportunities with few facilities feature at Tawarau and Whareorino. Tawarau Forest tracks provide a more isolated backcountry experience for Waitomo visitors, complementing the more accessible options along the Waitomo–Marokopa road. South Whareorino Forest is managed as a backcountry visitor destination, with high natural quiet values where visitors can expect only rare encounters with aircraft. To protect biodiversity values, recreational pursuits are actively discouraged in northern Whareorino Forest, along with aircraft use. Te Kauri Park is an accessible front country visitor destination and remains a focal point for conservation education.

Iwi, Waikato Regional Council, landowners and the community are proactively involved in conservation initiatives through this area.

## **POLICIES**

- 2.6.1 Advocate through statutory and non-statutory processes for the protection of ecological, landscape and cultural values off public conservation land, in particular:
- a) the indigenous forest ecological corridor from north to south along the length of this Place, and the submontane to coastal vegetation sequences, particularly at Karioi and Whareorino–Moeatoa;
  - b) karst systems, species, ecosystems, landforms and geological features;
  - c) migratory pathways of birds, particularly shorebirds, and the airspace used by bats; and
  - d) freshwater fish habitat and fish passage, particularly to maintain habitat connectivity and water quality from the coast to the headwaters of waterways that support threatened and at risk species.
- 2.6.2 Coordinate animal threat management and prevent the establishment of deer populations across this Place, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council, iwi, landowners and other interested parties.
- 2.6.3 Should not authorise the construction of structures visible along the skyline and on the slopes of Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain and the Herangi Range, to protect these significant landscape features.
- 2.6.4 Provide guidance to communities on priorities for:
- a) ecosystem restoration;
  - b) threatened species protection, survey and reintroduction; and
  - c) conservation advocacy and participation.
- 2.6.5 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the following locations, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three:

- a) above 600 m on Pirongia Mountain and Mt Karioi, to protect cultural values;
- b) Wairēinga Scenic Reserve, to protect the visitor setting; and
- c) northern Whareorino Forest, to protect biodiversity values.

2.6.6 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs at other locations on public conservation land within this Place, shown as Yellow and Green Zones on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2, 3.5.4, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three.

#### ***Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge***

2.6.7 Identify, in close collaboration with iwi, culturally appropriate opportunities to facilitate public access, use and enjoyment of Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve, including options for a coastal track development.

2.6.8 Minimise the provision of visitor facilities and new structures within Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve, to protect the undeveloped coastal landscape.

#### ***Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls***

2.6.9 Develop alternative hunting access to the wider reserve in consultation with hunting clubs to minimise encounters with visitors.

2.6.10 Seek a bylaw to control abseiling within Wairēinga Scenic Reserve to protect fragile ecological values from unacceptable adverse impacts.

2.6.11 Work with Waikato District Council and iwi to facilitate the commercial provision of visitor information and the sale of goods and services in the car park; in particular, seek consideration of:

- a) whether any such activities complement the visitor experience;
- b) whether the scale and size of such activities, including structures, is in keeping with the capacity of the car park and adjoining public conservation land; and
- c) whether there are any adverse impacts on ecological and cultural values on adjoining public conservation land.

#### ***Pirongia Mountain***

2.6.12 Implement the mechanisms outlined in the Waipa River Conservation Accord and Waikato River Conservation Accord as they apply to Pirongia Mountain, in accordance with the objectives in sections 1.4 and 1.6 in Part One of this CMS, to achieve the Vision and Strategy to restore and protect the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwaiā (the essence and well-being of the Waipa River).

2.6.13 Should allow independent use of mountain bikes only on the Nikau Walk and at the Kaniwhaniwha campsite, in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2 and 3.3.6 to 3.3.9 in Part Three.

2.6.14 May allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events on the Nikau Walk and at the Kaniwhaniwha campsite only in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2, 3.3.5 and 3.3.7 to 3.3.9 in Part Three and provided that:

- a) the designated mountain biking route is used;
- b) it does not involve competitive mountain bike events; and

- c) the activity is consistent with the track type (i.e. a grade two track is suitable for beginner riders, being predictable with no surprises) and provides a family-friendly mountain biking experience.

***Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino***

- 2.6.15 Manage karst values in this Place, in accordance with Policies 2.7.2, 2.7.4, 2.7.5 and 2.7.8 to 2.7.15 in section 2.7: Waitomo Place.
- 2.6.16 Seek reclassification of public conservation land between Pirongia Forest Park and Whareorino Forest to achieve a consistent land status, e.g. conservation park, to provide for the protection of priority ecological values.
- 2.6.17 Change the legal status of public conservation land in northern Whareorino Forest to control public access into this area and to protect ecological values.
- 2.6.18 Manage biosecurity in northern Whareorino Forest in accordance with biosecurity protocols developed to protect threatened fauna from disease threats.
- 2.6.19 Should allow independent use of mountain bikes only on Leitch’s Track and the Mahoenui Track (Whareorino Forest), in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2 and 3.3.6 to 3.3.9 in Part Three and the following criteria:
  - a) when using Leitch’s Track, mountain bikers observe biosecurity standards and avoid riding during the hours of darkness to protect nocturnal species; and
  - b) mountain bikers avoid riding the Mahoenui Track during August and September (the lambing season) in any year.
- 2.6.20 May allow guided mountain biking on Leitch’s Track and the Mahoenui Track (Whareorino Forest) only in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2, 3.3.5 and 3.3.7 to 3.3.9 in Part Three and provided that:
  - a) a maximum limit of ten people per group is met;
  - b) the activity meets biosecurity requirements to protect threatened species when using Leitch’s Track;
  - c) the activity only occurs during the hours of daylight on Leitch’s Track to protect nocturnal species; and
  - d) the activity only occurs on the Mahoenui Track from 1 October to 31 July (inclusive) in any year, to avoid the lambing season.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem site work programmes for the priority ecosystem sites in this Place, including Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain, Te Kauri and Whareorino, has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway in this Place, including the threatened plant *Myosotis* var. *petiolata*, has been completed.
- Best practice management standards for kauri dieback disease prevention have been implemented at Te Kauri Park.
- The Pahautea Hut (Pirongia Mountain) upgrade has been completed.
- Experiential development assessments have been completed for the Kaniwhaniwha Gateway Destination and Wairēinga.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Wairēinga Scenic Reserve has been fenced.
- The legal status of public conservation land within this Place has been reviewed, and the feasibility of applying a common legal status over the majority of public conservation land in this Place has been determined.
- Coastal walking opportunities on public conservation land along the coast from Mt Karioi have been identified in conjunction with iwi, and their feasibility has been assessed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Changes to legal status of public conservation land identified for this Place have been completed, including a change of legal status for northern Whareorino Forest.



## 2.7 Waitomo Place

The Waitomo Place covers the Waitomo Caves area and the visitor route to the west coast, as well as a number of karst sites in the surrounding area, including Waipuna Scenic Reserve, Hollow Hill Scenic Reserve, Grand Canyon Nature Reserve and Koropupu Scenic Reserve (refer Map 7.12).

### Description

The Waitomo Place contains karst features that have internationally significant natural, cultural, recreational and tourism values. The features of this Place are:

- Small fragmented reserves with uncommon remnant examples of forest overlying karst that contains uncommon or threatened species
- A suite of well-visited sites from Waitomo Caves west to the coast that are important for tourism and provide many international visitors with their first New Zealand experience of public conservation land
- Caves and other karst landforms of significant natural value, including sites of national and international geological significance that provide the most important recreational caving opportunities in the North Island
- Relationships with tangata whenua and the community that are focused on karst management and tourism.

Mixed podocarp-hardwood forests covering karst were once extensive in this Place, but only small remnants now remain. These remnants are important North Island examples of intact surface and subsurface karst systems that have relatively healthy bio- and geochemical processes from surface to cave. A number of threatened species are present, such as the at risk shrub *Teucrium parvifolium* and the cave-entrance fern *Asplenium cimmericum*. Kāeāea/New Zealand falcon, a variety of cave-adapted invertebrates and pekapeka/long-tailed bats are also found in these small reserves, with Grand Canyon Nature Reserve hosting one of the largest known populations of pekapeka/long-tailed bat in New Zealand; a smaller population is located at Ruakuri Natural Bridge.

Pest plants and animal pests such as goats, possums and rats threaten these small reserves. At Ruakuri, goats have been removed and there is a community partnership focused on possum and rat control. Pest plant control protects native plant species at Koropupu, while the exclusion of stock is important at all the small karst reserves.

Caves contain many treasured natural features, such as stalactites and stalagmites, sediment layers from past geological events, and a unique fauna. Many species that are now extinct or regionally absent have been identified from cave fossil deposits, including moa, kākāpō (*Strigops habroptila*), takahē (*Porphyrio mantelli*), North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis*), frogs and lizards. Cave features, such as speleothems and sediment layers, are ancient and fragile, and damage is cumulative and usually irreversible. They are also sensitive to catchment-based changes, such as increased sedimentation and changes in water quality. Impacts can include:

- Damage to vegetation, and surface and subsurface karst features
- Changes to cave microclimates, hydrology and biochemical processes
- Disturbance to fauna, and cultural and geological artefacts.

As noted in section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place, the Department's Karst Management Guidelines will guide the management of karst values within this Place.

Partnership with iwi groups is important in the Waitomo Place. The caves and lands of the Waitomo area have special value to Ngāti Maniapoto and hapū of Hauāuru ki Uta. Caves embrace the concept of Te Kōpū o Te Whenua (the womb of the Earth Mother,

Papatūānuku). The karst landscape includes urupā (burial sites), pā and battle sites, and preserved Māori artefacts. Opapaka Pā and Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve are examples of sites managed by the Department that are important to local iwi.

The karst landscape provides an important set of visitor sites and recreation opportunities based on landforms and geological features of scenic and aesthetic value. The most popular activities are cave tours, recreational caving and walking. Away from the caves and popular visitor sites, the Waitomo Place includes other recreational activity sites, such as mountain bike trails developed by the local community at Waitomo Forest (Matakana Conservation Area). The Te Araroa Trail passes through Waitomo Caves, and there is also some local rock climbing, hunting, fishing, walking and horse riding.

The Waitomo Glowworm Cave, Ruakuri Cave and Aranui Cave are internationally renowned visitor destinations. These 'show' caves provide an accessible, commercial cave experience for a large number of visitors. The Waitomo Glowworm Cave is managed in partnership by the Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust and the Department of Conservation through a joint management committee. The majority of the cave was returned to the Trust under a negotiated Waitangi Tribunal claim settled in 1990. The cave has a lessee in place operating guided cave tours and the parties meet regularly to progress cave management. Tourism activities at Aranui Cave and sections of Ruakuri Cave on public conservation land also operate under lease/licence to the same concessionaire with similar management arrangements.

The Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve, which is a key site for walking and commercial caving opportunities, receives an estimated 100 000 visitors each year. Black water rafting at Ruakuri is an important part of the local tourism industry, as is the extremely popular Ruakuri Bush Walk. This walk and the Opapaka Pā Walk, in nearby Hanganaki Scenic Reserve, form part of a Gateway Destination. The scenic Waitomo Walkway links the Waitomo village with Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve via the Waitomo Glowworm Cave. Further west towards the coast, the Mangapohue Natural Bridge attracts 25 000 people each year, complemented by the nearby Piripiri Cave and Marokopa Falls. Commercial tourist operations are a significant part of the socioeconomic makeup of the Waitomo area. Recreation and tourism opportunities on conservation land need to be carefully sited and managed to protect cultural, geological and ecological values, and to minimise impacts on other users.

Undeveloped or 'wild' caves in this Place are a nationally important recreational caving resource, especially for the North Island. Examples of recreational cave sites are Gardner's Gut Cave, Hollow Cave, Waipuna Cave, Reserve Cave and Puketiti Flower Cave. These wild caves are fragile and extremely vulnerable to the impacts of human activities, and so are carefully managed to minimise adverse effects. Management tools include controlled entry, route delineation, photo monitoring for change, and user group guidance, which includes a requirement for appropriate leadership skills (e.g. qualified guides and group leaders), and restrictions on group size, frequency of visits and visitor behaviours. Some caves have been damaged as a result of use and the Department intends to undertake cave restoration in collaboration with cave users.

Catchment management is important for protecting and maintaining cave systems, particularly at the Waitomo Glowworm Cave. The Department contributes to the Waitomo Catchment Scheme, which aims to improve stream condition and reduce erosion in the catchment. Scheme activities include fencing to exclude stock, riparian planting, retirement of marginal land, animal pest control (particularly goats) and slope stabilisation.

There are a number of sites where reclassification of land status would assist with the management of recreation activities and increase the protective status of fragile, wild cave

sites. Other statutory land management investigations could include the renaming of Hangatiki Scenic Reserve (requested by local iwi).

Community organisations are a vital part of the conservation, recreation and tourism landscape at Waitomo. The Department works with organisations such as the Waitomo Caves Discovery Centre, the Waitomo Catchment Trust Board, the New Zealand Speleological Society and local caving clubs to progress local conservation and recreation. Volunteer programmes are increasing, and there is opportunity for commercial sponsorship of conservation sites and values.

There is strong community interest in enabling the reintroduction of species that have disappeared from this Place (e.g. North Island weka, North Island kōkako and toutouwai/ North Island robin), and to undertake animal pest control to protect those species and improve ecosystem health. Another community initiative, which is supported in principle by the Department, is the creation of a walkway from Waitomo to the west coast across both private and public lands, utilising existing tracks and facilitates, including the Ruakuri walk and tracks in Tawarau Forest (in the Karioi to Whareorino Place).

### **Outcome, policies and milestones for the Waitomo Place**

#### **OUTCOME**

The Waitomo Place is recognised for its significant karst landscape, special ecosystems and species, cultural values, and tourism and recreation opportunities.

Ecosystem health is improving, especially at Ruakuri and Koropupu Scenic Reserves, and at Grand Canyon Nature Reserve. Stock is excluded and other ungulates (pigs, goats and deer) are rarely present. Possums, rats and pest plants are controlled to low levels in partnership with the community, and threatened species are secure and expanding in their range. Native species have been reintroduced to sites, such as Ruakuri Scenic Reserve, and these initiatives are well-regarded examples of community-led biodiversity conservation.

Karst features and caves, and their associated ecology, and hydrological and geological processes and features, are protected in collaboration with iwi, concessionaires, recreational caving groups and other visitors. In wild caves, user behaviour respects the caves and cave features, and impacts have declined to a point of minimal change. Restoration programmes are underway to remediate past impacts. The level of development within the show caves remains unchanged. The impact of cave use has reduced and public safety has improved at Aranui Cave as a result of improvements to existing infrastructure. Coordinated catchment management contributes to cave well-being, with sediment levels continuing to decline and stream biodiversity improving.

Wild caves are visited by groups of a size and skill level that ensures cave conservation and safety, and are taken by experienced leaders. The management of show cave use is a best practice model for karst conservation and internationally respected. Partnership with the Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust in this regard continues to work effectively, based on a high level of trust and respect.

The Waitomo Place is a first-class visitor destination for karst experiences amongst native forest and pastoral hill country, and more people are enjoying the recreational activities on offer. High-quality visitor opportunities are available at Waitomo and along the corridor west of Waitomo, where a range of scenic walks, viewpoints and cave opportunities show off classic forested karst landscapes, sculpted limestone outcrops (karren) and the subterranean world of caves.

The Waitomo Glowworm Cave is a tourism hub with highly visible commercial and retail activity. At other tourist sites, particularly Ruakuri, the natural setting prevails, with commercial activity visible only through minimal structures and occasional encounters with tour groups. Opapaka Pā and Ruakuri Walk are managed as a Gateway Destination, and are connected by the Waitomo Walkway and its restored stream corridor. At highly visited tourism sites, visitors are likely to encounter others during busy times of the year, but have no encounters with aircraft. Visitors experience the show caves as part of guided tours and expect to encounter other tour groups, while visitors to wild caves rarely or, in some cases, never encounter other groups.

Sites away from the main tourist route have basic facilities, and provide opportunities for walking and mountain biking. Visitors expect few encounters with other people and only occasional encounters with aircraft. Recreation opportunities are expanding in collaboration with iwi, the community and concessionaires, with minimal impact on karst, biodiversity, cultural and historic values, and other recreational users.

Cultural stories and history are brought to life at Opapaka and Ruakuri in partnership with iwi. Visitor appreciation of karst and biodiversity values is enhanced across the Place, particularly at Ruakuri, through the development of education and interpretation programmes in association with concessionaires.

This Place is respected by those who visit, live and operate tourism ventures in the area. New opportunities linked to karst values are realised through partnerships with interested parties and concessionaires. Philanthropists, an active conservation volunteer programme, iwi and the community help to maintain and enhance conservation values.

## **POLICIES**

- 2.7.1 Advocate through statutory and non-statutory processes for the protection of ecological, landscape and cultural values off public conservation land, in particular:
- a) karst systems, species, ecosystems, landforms and geological features;
  - b) indigenous forest areas, which are part of the ecological corridor within the Karioi to Whareorino Place;
  - c) bat habitat, including airspace; and
  - d) freshwater fish habitat and fish passage.
- 2.7.2 Manage the suite of short-stop visitor sites from Opapaka Pā to Marokopa Falls as an integrated visitor experience centred on the appreciation of karst landforms and ecosystems.
- 2.7.3 Continue to build relationships with the Hauāuru ki Uta Regional Management Committee and other iwi groups, to facilitate the management of cultural values and sites of cultural significance, and ecosystem conservation.
- 2.7.4 Apply the policies and actions outlined in the Department's Karst Management Guidelines<sup>39</sup> to the management of cave and karst areas located on public conservation lands within this Place, and in respect of advocacy for cave and karst areas on private land.

<sup>39</sup> Department of Conservation 1999: Karst management guidelines: policies and actions. Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

- 2.7.5 Review and update guidelines for recreational and commercial use of wild caves within this Place.
- 2.7.6 In partnership with Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust, the Waitomo Glowworm Cave is managed in line with the lease agreement.
- 2.7.7 Manage the Aranui Cave and publicly owned sections of Ruakuri Cave in line with lease/licence agreements, and prescribe similar management arrangements and conditions for show cave leases that expire during the term of this CMS.
- 2.7.8 Direct concessionaires, outdoor education groups and members of the public seeking a caving experience to appropriately robust caves, to protect fragile cave systems.
- 2.7.9 May authorise guided caving trips in caves provided that:
  - a) conservation values can be effectively protected by concession conditions and cave management techniques, including (but not limited to):
    - (i) prescribed guide-client ratios;
    - (ii) limits on group size, number of groups, and timing and frequency of visits;
    - (iii) prescribed routes;
  - b) effects on cultural and historic values of the site are minimised; and
  - c) impacts on other recreational users of the site are minimised.
- 2.7.10 Should only allow structures within caves that are necessary for cave protection, are inert, have minimal intrusion on their natural setting and, in the case of the show caves, are also for public safety, to protect cave ecosystems and processes.
- 2.7.11 Should only allow the use of artificial aids, including permanent anchors such as bolts, in caves where no other reasonable alternative exists, and where the mechanism is long-lasting, inert and placed in the safest position with the least impact, to protect cave ecosystems and processes.
- 2.7.12 Limit or prevent public access where this is necessary to protect caves and culturally significant sites, including wāhi tapu, from unacceptable adverse impacts.
- 2.7.13 Seek additional legal mechanisms, including bylaws, regulations or changes to land status, to protect wild caves from unacceptable adverse impacts.
- 2.7.14 Liaise with the New Zealand Speleological Society, Australasian Cave and Karst Management Association and local caving groups concerning cave and karst management issues, to ensure that cave users:
  - a) are aware of and actively seek to protect conservation values;
  - b) adhere to relevant behaviour guidelines, including the New Zealand Speleological Society's ethical guidelines; and
  - c) have appropriate skills, leadership and party sizes when visiting caves.

- 2.7.15 Monitor visitor impacts and experiences to ensure that karst biodiversity, cultural, historic and recreational values are not being compromised.
- 2.7.16 Contribute to and support activities of the Waitomo Catchment Scheme Trust.
- 2.7.17 Support the Waitomo Caves Discovery Centre in providing visitor information and conserving cave heritage.
- 2.7.18 Should allow the use of horses and the use of ATVs only on the Waitomo Forest access easement (Matakana Conservation Area), in accordance with Policies 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.4, 3.2.5, 3.2.8, 3.2.9, 3.7.2 and 3.7.3 in Part Three.
- 2.7.19 Should allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, only on the Waitomo Forest access easement and other formed mountain bike tracks in Matakana Conservation Area (Waitomo Forest) in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2 and 3.3.5 to 3.3.9 in Part Three.
- 2.7.20 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the following locations, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, due to the high visitor numbers and to protect the visitor setting, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three:
  - a) Waitomo Caves Scenic Reserve;
  - b) Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve;
  - c) Ruakuri Conservation Area;
  - d) Uekaha Scenic Reserve;
  - e) Hangatiki Scenic Reserve;
  - f) Mangapohue Natural Bridge Scenic Reserve;
  - g) Piripiri Cave Scenic Reserve; and
  - h) Marakopa Falls Scenic Reserve.
- 2.7.21 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the Grand Canyon Nature Reserve, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, to protect high biodiversity values, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three.
- 2.7.22 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on other public conservation land within this Place, shown as Green Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway in this Place has been completed.
- An experiential development assessment for the Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve and Opakapa Pā has been completed.
- A review of cave user guidelines has been completed.
- New interpretation has been developed and is in place at local treasure sites along the scenic drive west of Waitomo.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Land status has been reviewed and mechanisms have been identified for managing access, particularly to Hangatiki Scenic Reserve and Hollow Hill Scenic Reserve.
- Pest plants have been reduced to a very low density at Koropupu Scenic Reserve and animal pest threats to the plant *Teucrium parvifolium* have been removed from the same site.
- Monitoring and restoration of vulnerable or damaged cave sites has commenced in conjunction with cave users.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Any land status changes and access restrictions identified for this Place, particularly for Hangatiki Scenic Reserve and Hollow Hill Scenic Reserve, have been implemented.
- Quantitative monitoring has been established for pekapeka/long-tailed bat populations at Grand Canyon and Ruakuri.
- Cave restoration and mitigation have been completed.



## 2.8 Pureora Place

The Pureora Place comprises approximately 85 000 ha of public conservation land between Otorohanga and Lake Taupo (Taupomoana), the majority of which is encompassed by Pureora Forest Park (refer Map 7.13). This Place also incorporates, for the purpose of integrated management, an ecological corridor of private land managed by the Department under agreement with the landowners.

### Description

Pureora has witnessed conservation activism in the past, which is testament to its high conservation value. It is characterised by diverse ecosystems and landforms that reflect its geological history, and features a diverse cultural heritage, a wide range of recreation opportunities, including the Timber Trail cycleway, and the only gazetted recreational hunting area in Waikato Conservancy.

The forests of Pureora are among the last remnants of the extensive podocarp forests that once covered much of the central North Island. These podocarp forests range from 400 to 1200 m a.s.l., and encompass a wide range of forest types and habitats. While lowland to mid-altitude podocarp forests dominate this Place, other important ecosystems are also present, including subalpine forest, remnant beech (*Nothofagus* spp.) forest, shrublands, grasslands, temperature inversion frost flat shrublands and wetlands/mires. Special features of these ecosystems include the Waipa Mires, Waihora Lagoon, Whenuakura Plains (frost flats) and 40- to 60-m-high podocarp trees. Several forest areas within this Place are not included in Pureora Forest Park; for example, Cowan Wildlife Refuge. The Department intends to incorporate all adjoining public conservation land into the Forest Park so that it can be managed under one consistent land status.

Pureora contains seven priority ecosystem sites: Waipapa Ecological Area, Pikiariki Ecological Area, Pureora Mountain (including Waimonoa Ecological Area), Ratanunui Ecological Area, and the Upper Maramataha, Waihaha and Whangau Stream (including Whenuakura Plains). Other sites with renowned ecosystem values are Mangatutu and Nga Morehu Ecological Areas. In addition to managing these specific sites, maintenance of the connectivity of forest and wildlife habitats both on and off public conservation land by way of a vegetated corridor is a priority. The area between the northern and southern areas of Pureora Forest, which is important for long-term ecosystem health, will be particularly focused on during the life of this CMS.

Pureora's ecosystems, particularly the podocarp forests, provide habitat for nationally significant populations of indigenous flora and fauna. The threatened plant *Dactylanthus taylorii*, and the green mistletoe (*Ileostylus micranthus*) are found within the forest ecosystems. Wetlands host rare plants, including the at risk stout water milfoil and threatened water brome. The frost flat ecosystems also provide habitat for threatened plants, including Turner's kōhūhū (*Pittosporum turneri*) and *Pimelea tomentosa*.

A key feature at Pureora is its indigenous wildlife, particularly the abundant birdlife, which includes many commonly seen bird species, such as kererū/New Zealand pigeon and toutouwai/North Island robin. The threatened kāeāea/New Zealand falcon, North Island brown kiwi, yellow-crowned kākārīki (*Cyanoramphus auriceps*) and whio/blue duck are present, along with stronghold populations of the threatened North Island kākā and North Island kōkako. Also found here are threatened pekapeka/long- and short-tailed bats, with the latter population being particularly significant for its association with *Dactylanthus taylorii*. The at risk peketua/Hochstetter's frog is also present, along with a small reintroduced population of the threatened Archey's frog. Toutouwai/North Island robin and kōkako populations have been, and continue to be, source populations for translocations, demonstrating the success of conservation management in this Place.

The landscape of Pureora is characterised by the greywacke landforms of the Rangitoto and Hauhungaroa Ranges, and the volcanic cones of Mt Pureora and Titiraupenga. The Hauhungaroa Range, Mt Pureora and Titiraupenga are identified as outstanding natural features and landscapes (refer Appendix 10). Forest cover was almost completely destroyed during the Taupo eruptions 1800 years ago, but significant features of this era are a preserved sub-fossil forest that was discovered in 1983, small beech forest remnants, and a number of internationally and nationally significant geological sites.

Significant threat management programmes targeting introduced animals and pest plants are implemented across a large portion of Pureora. Targeted weeds include heather (*Calluna vulgaris*), willow (*Salix* spp.) and *Pinus contorta*. Goats and possums are controlled over most of Pureora Forest Park, rats are controlled at selected locations to protect threatened wildlife, including Archey's frog and North Island kōkako, and stoats are controlled to protect whio/blue duck. The Animal Health Board undertakes the majority of possum control for TB vector control; however, the progressive eradication of TB across this Place and the subsequent redirection of Animal Health Board possum control funding will have a significant impact on ecosystem health if the current level of possum control cannot be maintained. Community groups lead rat and possum control for North Island kōkako protection at Mangatutu, and assist with whio/blue duck protection in the western side of the Hauhungaroa Range.

Recreational hunters targeting pigs, goats and red deer are one of the largest user groups in Pureora. The Pureora Forest Park Hunting Competition is a popular annual event with recreational hunters. Hunting is managed on a permit-only basis. The 18 750-ha gazetted Pureora Recreational Hunting Area (RHA) encompasses the Rangitoto Range south to, and including, Waipapa (refer Map 7.13). Commercial wild animal recovery is managed to minimise conflict with recreational red deer hunting, and is generally limited to outside the RHA. However, the Department does occasionally allow limited commercial wild animal recovery within the RHA where the impact of red deer is high and wild animal recovery is possible.

The RHA provides for recreational hunting as a means (but not exclusively) for controlling red deer and pigs. Red deer hunting opportunities are managed to achieve protection of priority ecosystem values, while enabling use and enjoyment of this valued hunting opportunity. Having an RHA that overlaps with key ecological management areas can create conflicting priorities. The Department intends to review the RHA boundary, in consultation with hunters, to bring it in line with areas most suited to fostering recreational hunting. Working with recreational hunting interests is an important part of managing hunting opportunities in the RHA and throughout Pureora.

Pureora provides a range of ecosystem services that benefit local and regional communities. The large areas of threat-managed forest act as a carbon sink, and also provide clean water, landscape stability and soil conservation, and reduce flooding and sediment generation. Pureora supports significant populations of seed-dispersing indigenous bird species that facilitate the long-term survival of local and regional forest ecosystems.

Pureora has a diverse heritage, including a long history of Māori use and occupation, an era of native forest logging, and a legacy of conservation protests. Logging occurred between the 1920s and 1980s, during which time there were several logging/milling settlements. Pureora Village in particular was a thriving settlement from 1950 to 1980. Historic treetop native logging protests in the 1970s contributed to an eventual end to native logging in the Park and in many other parts of New Zealand. Historic remnants from the native logging era are extensive, and feature relicts such as tramways and haulers. The Department actively manages four historic sites in Pureora, the most significant of which is the Ongarue

Tramway and its associated spiral—which is recognised as a major feat of engineering in a forest setting.

Pureora has special significance to a number of local iwi interests, including Ngāti Maniapoto, Rereahu (affiliated to Ngāti Maniapoto), Ruakawa, Pouakani and Ngāti Tuwharetoa. Ngāti Maniapoto and Raukawa have interests in the Upper Waipa River catchment in the Rangitoto Range. The peaks of Pureora (Pureora o Kahu), Titiraupenga and Wharepūhunga are tribal landmarks, recognised as maunga tapu by several iwi. The cultural significance and management of Titiraupenga has been acknowledged as a specific component of Treaty settlements with Pouakani and Raukawa. Pureora o Kahu is a culturally significant landmark to Raukawa and Rereahu, and is also included as an overlay site in Treaty settlements for these iwi, with Wharepūhunga also having status as an overlay site for Raukawa.

Many of the waterways, such as the Waimiha, are also significant to iwi and Māori in the area, who have stories to complement their claim to mana whenua. Ngāti Maniapoto has reached a Treaty settlement for the Waipa River, the upper reaches of which are in northern sections of this Place. The health of the Waipa River catchment contributes to the restoration and maintenance of both the Waipa and Waikato Rivers, including the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwaiā (the essence and well-being of the Waipa River) and the health and well-being of the Waikato River. It is anticipated that other Maniapoto iwi groups will resolve Treaty claims within this Place during the life of this CMS (refer sections 1.4 and 1.6 in Part One).

Pureora provides a suite of recreation opportunities that are easily accessible by the large urban population in the central and upper North Island. Recreation opportunities include hunting, bird watching, short- and medium-length walks, multi-day tramps, day and overnight mountain biking, four-wheel driving (including scenic touring and more challenging four-wheel driving opportunities), ATV use and horse riding. These opportunities are centred on an appreciation of natural and historic values and exploring Pureora's many roads and tracks. Features include:

- Large, diverse and easily accessible native forest bird populations, including many species rarely seen elsewhere
- Large, intact remnant podocarp forests
- Sizeable areas of backcountry terrain in both north and south Pureora
- The RHA in north Pureora
- The easy grade Timber Trail cycleway between Pureora and Ongarue (opened in 2012)
- Te Araroa—The Long Pathway (which crosses the Hauhungaroa Range)
- The popular Kakaho campsite (managed as a Gateway Destination)
- A wide range of short, day and overnight opportunities
- A dedicated four-wheel driving area (maintained by four-wheel driving enthusiasts)
- A range of facilities, including four huts, several campsites, cabins in Pureora Village, and two outdoor education centres managed under concession.

Pureora Village is the arrival point for many visitors and is the ideal location for focusing visitor information services, as well as potentially additional public accommodation and camping opportunities, particularly with the village being a starting point for the Timber Trail. The Pa Harakeke Eco-cultural Centre and Maraeroa cycleway, which incorporates part of the Timber Trail, provide public accommodation and recreation opportunities on adjoining private land complementary to those offered by the Department. Recreationalists, including hunters, value natural quiet, particularly in backcountry and remote areas of the Park. Aircraft activity can impact on these values but also facilitate access into more remote

areas, particularly for hunting and, more recently, heli-biking. Aircraft activity is managed to minimise the impact on these recreational settings.

The multi-day cycling and walking opportunities along the Timber Trail are anticipated to increase visitation and provide significant business opportunities for the community and tourism sector—by Year 5 of this CMS, the Timber Trail is estimated to have created considerable economic benefits, largely driven by the uptake of fully supported guided overnight or multi-day tours. These aspirations are reflected by the Timber Trail's status (along with the Piropiro campsite) as an Icon Destination and a Historic Icon Site under the Department's visitor destination management framework. The Department intends to carry out visitor satisfaction surveys to monitor visitor experiences, and to identify any conflicts between visitor groups or unanticipated management issues on the Trail.

Potential concession opportunities include supporting products and services, such as guided tours, transportation and public accommodation. The development of public accommodation in the vicinity of Piropiro campsite has been identified as important for realising tourism opportunities associated with the Timber Trail; however, maintaining the traditional camping experience at this location is also important to existing users.

In addition to the Timber Trail, there is significant interest from the community for continued provision for four-wheel driving, horse riding and other mountain biking opportunities. Key recreation management issues in Pureora are:

- Minimising conflict between recreation activities, particularly at popular locations, e.g. campsites
- Balancing provision for aerial access into backcountry areas with the protection of natural quiet (for all recreational users)
- Maintaining traditional camping experiences that are valued by users alongside the development of the Timber Trail
- Preventing unauthorised track and campsite formation
- Making provision for motorised vehicle opportunities that are consistent with the visitor setting and values present
- Ensuring that any development has minimal impacts on ecological values, and is consistent with historic and recreational values

It is important that the Department works closely with user groups and those interested in providing services and facilities to support recreation opportunities.

Pureora benefits from significant volunteer contributions to conservation efforts, most notably in threat management, tree planting and campsite maintenance. There is potential for further contribution from the community in this regard and with respect to the provision of new recreation opportunities.

### **Proposed guided all terrain vehicle (ATV) tours on the Timber Trail**

The Department has identified a potential opportunity for guided ATV tours on the Timber Trail. This discussion box outlines the proposal and seeks public feedback on the concept, both in terms of potential benefits and possible impacts on natural, cultural, historic and recreational values. The Department will use this feedback to help determine whether: (1) it is appropriate (ecologically and recreationally) for the activity to occur on the Timber Trail; and (2) if enabled, what limits and controls should be applied.

This proposal arose from interest within the community for opportunities that enable less able-bodied people to experience the Timber Trail through guided ATV tours. This type of activity would enable a wider range of people to experience the Timber Trail and provide a new business opportunity. Limited and tightly controlled ATV tours on selected sections of the Timber Trail are proposed for a trial period of 2 years, the detail of which is outlined below.

It is proposed that guided ATV tours be limited to two locations on the Timber Trail (refer Map 7.13):

- (1) From Angel's Rest to Piropiro campsite (north to south).
- (2) From the northernmost point of the Ellis and Burnand Tramway to the southern boundary of the Forest Park.<sup>40</sup>

These locations were selected because they would enable ATV tours to travel along the Trail and visit historic features and points of interest, and would, generally, be easily accessed, if those wishing to lead tours can negotiate access across private land adjacent to the Forest Park.

To manage impacts on other users of the Timber Trail, and to minimise adverse impacts on ecological, cultural and historic values, and the track surface and associated infrastructure, the following limits and controls are proposed:

- 1) ATV tours occur only from 1 May to 31 October (inclusive), excluding public holiday weekends;
- 2) A maximum speed of 15 km/h on the Trail and 5 km/h on bridges;
- 3) A maximum of six people per tour<sup>41</sup>, with a minimum ratio of five clients to one guide;
- 4) A maximum of five tours per day;
- 5) A maximum of two operators undertaking guided ATV tours; and
- 6) All applications for the activity would also be assessed in accordance with Policies 3.2.4, 3.2.8 and 3.2.9 in Part Three.

To assess the benefit and impacts of ATV tours on the Timber Trail, the activity would be trialled for a 2-year period (2014 to 2015 inclusive). Initially, ATV tours would only be granted to run from 1 May to 31 October 2014 and 1 May to 31 October 2015. During the trial, the Department would monitor visitor numbers, visitor satisfaction and physical impacts of ATV use along the Timber Trail. On conclusion of the trial, the Department would review the information obtained during the trial period, and particularly consider

---

<sup>40</sup> Access agreements across private land are needed to enable access to this section of the Timber Trail.

<sup>41</sup> One tour equals a maximum of one return trip along the Trail.

any impacts on or conflicts between ATV use and walkers / mountain bikers, and any impacts on the track and associated infrastructure, and ecological, cultural and historical values. The outcome of that review would likely be one of the following scenarios:

- 1) ATV tours would continue on the Timber Trail under the same controls and limits as prescribed for the trial because the impacts are found to be acceptable or minimal; or
- 2) ATV tours would cease on the Timber Trail because the impacts are found to be unacceptable; or
- 3) The Department would propose new controls and limits for ATV tours on the Timber Trail through a publicly notified plan change to this CMS, because the impacts are found to be either minimal, or acceptable with tighter limits and controls.

#### **Questions for submitters**

- 1) Do you support a trial of limited and tightly controlled guided ATV tours on the Timber Trail?
- 2) Do you support the locations where it is proposed the activity be trialled?
- 3) Do you support the limits and controls proposed for the activity and the trial?

#### **Proposed opportunities for horse riding, mountain biking and four-wheel driving**

The Department has identified three potential opportunities for horse riding, mountain biking and four-wheel driving activities in Pureora. The Department seeks feedback on these proposals, the details of which are outlined below.

*(1) Proposed Piropiro horse riding recreation area (refer Map 7.16) and proposed Piropiro mountain bike recreation area (refer Map 7.15)*

An opportunity is available for the development of purpose-built horse riding and mountain biking tracks in a modified area near Piropiro from which exotic trees have been removed. The Department would like users to lead and undertake track development in the defined areas. If enabled, the opportunity would be provided on the following basis:

- that horses would not be allowed to access the area set aside for mountain bike track development and vice versa (to minimise conflict between these two user groups);
- any track development would need to be consistent with, and if possible contribute to, the long-term goal to restore indigenous ecosystems in the area; and
- a permit would be obtained from the Department before commencing track development (which would be assessed against the criteria specified in Policies 3.3.6 and 3.7.2 in Part Three).

*(2) Proposed 'Arataki' four-wheel driving area (refer Map 7.14)*

The Department seeks feedback on the provision of a new four-wheel drive area in the vicinity of Arataki Road. This opportunity would be provided on the basis that users maintain existing routes in the defined area. If enabled, the opportunity would be provided on the following basis:

- that users would only be allowed to use four-wheel drive vehicles on the formed tracks/routes;
- the use would need to be consistent with, and if possible contribute to, the long-term goal to restore indigenous ecosystems in the area;
- any track development would be limited to linking established tracks or routes, to minimise any impact on ecological values; and
- a permit would need to be obtained from the Department for any limited track development (which would be assessed against the criteria specified in Policy 3.2.4 in Part Three).

(3) *Potential mountain bike access between Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) and the Timber Trail (not shown on maps)*

The Department seeks feedback on the possibility of providing mountain bike access through Pureora Forest Park linking the Timber Trail with mountain biking opportunities at Lake Taupo (Taupomoana). A route has not been identified, but it may not include the Waihaha Track (due to the damage caused by unauthorised mountain bike use, unless this could be resolved). The Department would consider this opportunity on the basis that user groups would lead and fund the opportunity, and work closely with the Department on all aspects of any proposal. This would include route definition and obtaining the necessary permit(s). Any proposal would be assessed against the criteria in Policy 3.3.6 in Part Three.

**Question for submitters**

- 1) Do you support the above proposals? Please explain why.

**Outcome, policies and milestones for the Pureora Place**

**OUTCOME**

Pureora is recognised as a place of ecological importance and as a nature tourism destination, with diverse cultural and historic heritage, and many backcountry recreation opportunities.

Priority ecosystems sites, including Waipapa, Pikiariki and Waihaha, are maintained and restored to a healthy functioning state. The integrity of other important ecosystems and indigenous forest corridors is improving in collaboration with iwi, the community, local authorities and other interested parties. Healthy forests contribute to the provision of clean water, soil conservation, and reduced flooding and sedimentation.

Populations of threatened and at risk species, including North Island kākā, North Island kōkako, native bats, *Dactylanthus taylorii* and native frogs, are maintained and expanding in their range. Interested parties lead and assist with protection of threatened and at risk species, including North Island kōkako and whio/blue duck.

Pureora's podocarp forests are recognised nationally as a source location for species translocations, which are undertaken in an ecologically sustainable manner. Research and monitoring provides improved knowledge of the status of species and ecosystems throughout Pureora. The podocarp ecosystem is a biodiversity showcase where visitors experience the wonder of being surrounded by towering trees and abundant native birdlife.

Threats are managed at priority sites, including priority ecosystems, in cooperation with iwi, the community and other agencies. New parties are assisting with animal



pest control to achieve broad-scale improvements in forest health across Pureora. Recreational and commercial hunters actively contribute to the control of red deer and pig populations, and the ecological impacts of red deer are better understood. Pureora remains free of all deer species apart from red deer. *Pinus contorta* has been removed, heather is at very low density, and willow has been removed from wetlands in the Waipapa Ecological Area and the mires of the Hauhangaroa Range.

The natural landscape, natural features and natural character of Pureora prevails. The natural form and skyline of the Rangitoto and Hauhungaroa Ranges, Mt Pureora and Titiraupenga are protected features within this landscape. The Department advocates for the protection of ecological corridors, wildlife habitat, and significant natural features and landscapes that are contiguous with Pureora's ecosystems and landscapes.

Pureora's actively managed historic and cultural sites and values are preserved and enhanced. The stories of Pureora's timber logging history and culturally significant sites are brought to life and connect visitors to the past, including a range of historic sites and relics preserved in a forest setting.

A positive working relationship with all iwi that claim mana whenua in this Place fosters shared outcomes that benefit both iwi and conservation and build on established and new Treaty settlement partnerships. This includes recognition of cultural values, including sites and landforms of significance to iwi (wāhi tapu). In particular, the mauri of Titiraupenga, Pureora o Kahu and Wharepūhunga is enhanced, and healthy forests contribute to the maintenance and restoration of culturally significant waterways, such as the Ongarue and Waipa Rivers, and the Mangaparuhou and Waimiha Streams.

People visit Pureora to enjoy its diverse range of recreation opportunities in a mix of natural and rural settings. Pureora's natural values, rich cultural heritage and reputation as a place for adventure underlie visitor experiences. Recreational users capitalise on the extensive network of tracks, huts, campsites and roads to enjoy camping, multi-day tramping, mountain biking, bird watching and hunting expeditions. Family camping remains a traditional experience that is enjoyed particularly during the summer months. The popular Kakaho campsite is managed as a Gateway Destination.

Access to backcountry and remote areas provide experienced users with opportunities to explore and hunt the hinterland of Pureora on foot and, in some locations, by vehicle, horse and mountain bike. Hunting remains a valued traditional activity, especially during 'the roar' in March and April, when other visitors are most likely to encounter deer hunters. A peaceful setting prevails within Pureora, and visitors expect only occasional encounters with aircraft, except during 'the roar' (March–April), when aircraft activity is more regular. Short bursts of activity may also be experienced occasionally during the summer for special events, such as heli-biking. Some disturbance to natural quiet is also expected close to roads, tracks and campsites that are accessible by motorised vehicles.

The Timber Trail cycleway has raised Pureora's profile as a destination for mountain biking and walking. It provides easy multi-day adventures for a wide range of people, showcasing Pureora's logging history and magnificent podocarp forest ecosystems. Along with the Piropiro campsite, the Timber Trail is managed as an Icon Destination and a Historic Icon Site. More visitors enjoy traditional camping at Piropiro campsite, with ancillary services, such as public accommodation, sited away from the campsite. Use of the Timber Trail is supported by a range of services that are in keeping with the recreational setting, landscape and natural values.

Pureora Village has become the focal point for visitor information and the starting point for many adventures. The Timber Trail has contributed to increased visitation and improved prosperity in the community. Visitors leave Pureora with a greater understanding and appreciation of its natural, cultural and historic values.

New recreation opportunities and the maintenance of existing opportunities are facilitated in consultation with recreational users and the public. Nature tourism, commercial recreation opportunities and community conservation initiatives at Pureora have grown in collaboration with iwi, the community, local authorities, tourism agencies and business.

## **POLICIES**

- 2.8.1 Implement Treaty settlement mechanisms that apply to this Place in partnership with iwi, including (but not limited to):
- a) the Memorandum of Understanding with Pouakani;
  - b) the Partnership Agreement with Rereahu;
  - c) the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato (and Waipa) Rivers (Ngāti Maniapoto and Raukawa); and
  - d) the Waipa River Conservation Accord with Ngāti Maniapoto.
- 2.8.2 Collaborate with iwi, the community and organisations to identify, protect and interpret, where appropriate, sites and stories of historical and cultural significance.
- 2.8.3 Advocate for, and seek the cooperation of, adjoining landowners, to maintain the public-private indigenous forest corridor from Mangatutu to Moerangi and through into the Department's Tongariro/Whanganui/Taranaki Conservancy. Priorities include areas between the Rangitoto Range and Hauhungaroa Range, and areas that have high ecological values and that are potentially at the greatest risk of loss.
- 2.8.4 Identify biodiversity restoration and protection priorities that iwi, the community and other organisations can assist with or lead at Pureora.
- 2.8.5 Coordinate animal pest control activities with adjoining landowners, local authorities, the Animal Health Board, iwi, the community and hunters.
- 2.8.6 Support recreational hunting where it facilitates the protection of biodiversity values, through:
- a) establishing and structuring closer working relationships with hunting clubs;
  - b) continuing the Pureora Forest Park hunting competition; and
  - c) providing information about access, hunting etiquette, safety and wild animal hotspots.
- 2.8.7 Liaise with recreational user groups in respect of the use, maintenance and creation of opportunities at Pureora, and the management of conflict between user groups.

- 2.8.8 Prevent the use of unauthorised encampments on public conservation land in Pureora and ultimately require their removal.
- 2.8.9 Manage the Timber Trail in consultation with local authorities, the tourism sector, iwi, the community, recreational users and other interested organisations.
- 2.8.10 Gather information to increase understanding about the density and associated ecological impacts of red deer, particularly within the Pureora Recreational Hunting Area.
- 2.8.11 Review, in consultation with hunting groups and other interested parties, the boundaries and extent of the Pureora Recreational Hunting Area.
- 2.8.12 Should not authorise structures that are visible along the skyline and on the slopes of the Rangitoto Range, Titiraupenga, Mt Pureora (Pureora O Kahu), and the Hauhungaroa Range, to protect these significant landscape features.
- 2.8.13 Consider providing limited, small-scale, overnight, powered campervan sites in Pureora Village, in collaboration with interested parties.
- 2.8.14 Seek a change in land status to include all adjoining public conservation land into Pureora Forest Park, including Cowan Wildlife Refuge, Pureora Conservation Area and Meyer Block Wildlife Refuge Reserve.
- 2.8.15 Monitor the visitor experience and visitor satisfaction on the Timber Trail to inform management.
- 2.8.16 May allow structures, including built public accommodation, in accordance with Policy 3.9.5 in Part Three, provided that:
  - a) they are located in modified areas;
  - b) they avoid ecologically sensitive sites (except where the structure is directly linked to the appreciation of natural values, e.g. a forest tower, in which case adverse impacts are avoided or minimised);
  - c) they are not located in designated campsites;
  - d) a cultural assessment supports the building of structures (if the structure is proposed within areas acknowledged by Treaty settlements); and
  - e) they are of a scale and design that is in keeping with the visitor setting and surrounding landscape.
- 2.8.17 Should allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, only at the locations shown on Map 7.15 and listed in Table 3, in accordance with Policies 3.3.1, 3.3.2 and 3.3.5 to 3.3.9 in Part Three.
- 2.8.18 Should allow the use of horses only at the locations shown on Map 7.16 and listed in Table 3, in accordance with Policies 3.7.2 and 3.7.3 in Part Three.
- 2.8.19 Should allow the use of motorised vehicles only at the locations shown on Map 7.14 and listed on Table 3, in accordance with Policies 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.4, 3.2.5, 3.2.8 and 3.2.9 in Part Three.
- 2.8.20 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the following locations, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.3, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three:

- a) Waipapa and Pikiariki, to protect the visitor setting and high biodiversity values; and
  - b) above 800 m on Titiraupenga and Pureora o Kahu, to protect cultural values.
- 2.8.21 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on other public conservation land in this Place, shown as Orange Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 3.5.1, 3.5.2, 3.5.5, 3.5.6 and 3.5.7 in Part Three, and provided that:
- a) there is a maximum of 150 landings in any year across the Pureora Place Orange Zone;
  - b) all aircraft activity occurs only between 10 am and 3 pm during the period 15 March to 30 April (inclusive) in any year;
  - c) take-offs and landings in the vicinity of Piropiro, Kakaho and Landing Road campsites only occur within the designated landing areas (not in the campsites);
  - d) no more than two landings per day occur at Piropiro, Kakaho and Landing Road campsite landing areas between 15 November and 14 March (inclusive), and during public holiday weekends and school holidays in any year, except for special events (e.g. recreational or educational events) that meet the criteria in Policy 3.5.6 in Part Three; and
  - e) vegetation is not removed to create take-off or landing sites.

## **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem site work programmes for the priority ecosystem sites in this Place has been completed.
- Report on the number of nationally threatened species for which a work programme is underway in this Place has been completed.
- The Timber Trail visitor survey has been completed and 95% of visitors are satisfied with their experience on the Trail.
- Report on the maintenance and restoration of locally treasured natural heritage (ecosystems and species) in the Pureora Place has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- Willow has been removed from wetlands in the Waipapa Ecological Area and the mires of the Hauhangaroa Range.
- *Pinus contorta* has been removed from public conservation land within the Pureora Place and heather has been reduced to a very low density.
- Review of the location and extent of the Recreation Hunting Area has been completed.

### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Public conservation land adjoining Pureora Forest Park has been added to the Park.
- Changes arising from the review of the Pureora Recreational Hunting Area have been implemented.

Table 3 Mountain bike, horse and motorised vehicle access within in Pureora Place (refer Maps 7.14 to 7.16).

LOCATION	ACCESS TYPE
Waitaramoa Road	All motorised vehicles;
Barryville Road	Horses;
Pikiariki Road	Mountain bikes.
Maramataha Road	
Totara Stream Road	
Waihora Road	
Titiraupenga Road	
Ngaroma Recreation Four-wheel Drive Forest Road	
Bismarck Road	
Cabbage Tree Road	
Swamp Road	
Waimonoa Road	
Endeans Road	
Ketemaringi Road	
Okauaka Road West	
Okahukura Road (excluding eastern section)	
Link Road	
Bog Inn Road	
Kaka Road	
Select Loop Road / Mountain Bike Track	
Fletchers Road	
Kokomiko Road	
Tihoi Road	
Otamaroa Road	
Ranginui Repeater Road	
Owawenga Road	
Nursery Road	
Mountain Road	
Village Road	
Workshop Road	
Piropiro Road	
Perhams Avenue	
Central North Island Road	
Quarry Road	

Table 3 continued

LOCATION	ACCESS TYPE
Plains Road	All Terrain Vehicles (ATVs);
Drum Bridge Road	Horses;
Arataki Road	Mountain bikes.
Okahukura Road (eastern section)	
Wildlife Hut Track	
Black Fern Track	
Maramataha Track	
Tui Road	Horses; Mountain bikes.
Toi Toi Road	ATVs; Mountain bikes.
Gully Road	Mountain bikes.
Pikiariki Tractor Hauler Track	
Centre of North Island Track	
Ketemaringi Track	
Waione Tram Track	
Arataki Swing Bridge Track	
Forest Tower Walk	
Crawler Tractor Track	
Panhandle Track	
The Timber Trail	
Pureora Mountain Bike Zone	Mountain bikes, on formed tracks only.
Pureora Horse Riding Zone	Horses, on formed tracks only.
Ngaroma Four-wheel Driving Area	Four-wheel drive vehicles only.

# Part Three—Specific policy requirements for Waikato Conservancy

## General

This section implements the requirements of the Conservation General Policy 2005 and other legislative requirements. The policies of this section apply to all public conservation lands and waters covered by this CMS. Where the provisions in Part Three are different from the provisions in Part Two—Places, the more specific provisions in Part Two prevail.

## Vehicles

Vehicle use is part of the range of recreation opportunities that are allowed on public conservation lands and waters, providing it is consistent with protecting the values for which those lands and waters are held. In this context, vehicles include motorised and non-motorised land vehicles; fixed-wing, helicopter and non-motorised aircraft; and motorised and non-motorised watercraft. Further discussion about vehicle use can be found in Part Two—Places.

### **Motorised vehicles (four-wheel drive vehicles, all terrain vehicles, motorbikes, power-assisted cycles)**

Motorised vehicle use is not generally allowed off formed roads on public conservation land.

Land-based motorised vehicles are used on public conservation lands for a number of purposes, including recreation/tourism (with vehicle use being either the primary recreational activity or a method to get somewhere), concession activities, farming purposes (associated with grazing), public transport and other authorised uses.

Opportunities for driving vehicles, such as four-wheel drives, away from district roads and state highways are generally found on private lands, non-conservation lands, or legal roads, rather than conservation lands. Nevertheless, the ability to use some roads on public conservation land, such as old logging roads, is considered important by four-wheel driving clubs.

Motorised vehicle opportunities within Waikato Conservancy can generally be divided into (1) two-wheel driving, (2) four-wheel driving, and (3) motorbikes, and (4) all terrain vehicles. Four-wheel driving can include scenic driving and touring, or specialist four-wheel driving that requires expert equipment and skills. Waikato Conservancy has limited opportunities for using motorised vehicles on public conservation lands away from formed roads. Two tracks at Maratoto (Coromandel Peninsula) provide for four-wheel driving and motorcycle use, and a dedicated track at Ngaroma (Pureora) provides four-wheel driving opportunities. Pureora also provides opportunities for motorised vehicle use on a number of formed roads. All terrain vehicles are often used in Pureora for hunting access and the Department intends to manage their use for this purpose on a permit-only basis at locations where motorised vehicle access has not been specified (refer section 2.8: Pureora Place). Four-wheel driving clubs take an active role in track management and maintenance at Maratoto and Ngaroma. Four-wheel driving interests also extend beyond Waikato Conservancy, with a high level of interest and use of these routes by clubs from the Auckland region.

Motorised vehicle use has the potential to adversely affect conservation values. Use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands can have effects on natural quiet and the enjoyment by others, as well as direct impacts on fragile ecosystems, historic and cultural



sites, and wildlife. Coastal environments, wetlands and bogs are particularly vulnerable to impacts of vehicle use, which can disturb and damage shorebird nesting habitat and sensitive dune systems. Vehicle use can also introduce biosecurity risks through the spread of weeds and disease. Further provision for motorised vehicle use within Waikato Conservancy will need to be carefully assessed to ensure that adverse impacts are minimised. The Department intends to liaise with clubs when considering land-based motorised vehicle opportunities.

### **Mountain bikes (non-motorised)**

Non-motorised mountain biking and bicycling, excluding power-assisted cycles, is an established recreational activity in Waikato Conservancy. Improved track designs, management techniques, user education and signage have reduced concerns about potential user conflict and impacts on site values.

Mountain biking can generally be divided into (1) mainstream and (2) thrill seeker categories. Mainstream mountain biking typically occurs on shared-use tracks, such as four-wheel drive roads, pack tracks or tracks originally constructed for walkers. Thrill-seeker mountain biking involves specialist bikes for high-risk and relatively high-impact riding, and is typically catered for at mountain bike parks on dedicated, mountain bike-only tracks.

Mainstream mountain biking on suitable tracks with appropriate conditions generally creates few management issues for the Department—the level of impact is similar to walking, although the impacts may differ from those caused by walkers. Thrill seeker mountain biking, including fast downhill riding, has the potential for greater social conflict on shared tracks and to cause physical track damage. Social conflict can be minimised by implementing seasonal mountain bike access and one-way flows, encouraging adherence to the Mountain Bikers Code, and placing limits and conditions on sporting or competitive mountain bike events.

Mainstream mountain biking and cycling opportunities on public conservation land within Waikato Conservancy have increased significantly, particularly with development of the Timber Trail at Pureora (part of the New Zealand Cycleway project) and creation of other localised opportunities, such as family-orientated mountain biking on the Nikau Walk (Pirongia). Opportunities also exist off public conservation lands at Pureora, Te Uku/Pirongia, the Waikato River and selected sites on the Coromandel Peninsula.

The Conservancy offers other sites with potential to formalise new opportunities for mountain biking, where it is compatible with track design and other users (refer Part Two—Places). These would need careful assessment, including consideration of opportunities available off public conservation lands.

### **Watercraft**

Motorised watercraft use in Waikato Conservancy is generally low. Recreational hunters and fishers are the predominant users of motorised watercraft on public conservation waters (mainly wetlands and lakes) in Waikato Conservancy.

Limitations have been placed on motorised watercraft use on conservation waters to manage adverse impacts on ecological, cultural, historic and recreation values. The Department will consider discouraging watercraft access at other sensitive sites where adverse effects are anticipated (refer section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place).

The Department may also introduce bylaws or regulations to manage future adverse impacts.

## Aircraft

All aircraft require a concession to land on, take off from, or hover above any public conservation lands and waters that are not a certified aerodrome, other than for search and rescue, departmental management purposes, emergency situations, maritime navigational-aid management or land survey work. The Department, acting under delegated authority from the Minister, manages aircraft landing concessions under provisions of the National Parks, Reserves and Conservation Acts, in accordance with Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987 (in particular section 17ZF).

Aircraft are important for supporting the management of public conservation lands and waters and for search and rescue operations, and can facilitate the use and enjoyment of public conservation lands and waters by providing access to difficult-to-reach places and allowing quick access for people with limited time. However, aircraft activity—even scenic flights that do not involve landings—can have adverse effects on other users, impacting on values such as natural quiet and remoteness where freedom from mechanised intrusion is sought. Aircraft use is often discouraged to avoid adverse effects on users of public conservation land.

Demand for aircraft landings varies across Waikato Conservancy but is generally low. Peaks in aircraft activity occur mostly in association with seasonal access for hunting, particularly at Pureora. Demand and the potential for increased aircraft use and effects on recreational users are greatest on the Coromandel Peninsula.

The Department is applying a nationally consistent approach for aircraft management across the country to:

- Establish clear expectations for operators and users in relation to the presence or absence of aircraft activity
- Protect values associated with places and recreational experiences
- Minimise conflicts between recreationalists (and other users) who use aircraft and those who do not wish to experience disturbance from aircraft.

Up to four aircraft zones can be applied nationally to the management of aircraft activity on and above public conservation lands and waters. These zones are Red, Orange, Yellow and Green (refer Appendix 15). In Waikato Conservancy, all four zones have been applied (refer “Visitor Management Zones Map”). The outcome and policies in Part Two—Places, and the policies in this section set an expectation of the level of aircraft activity that may be encountered at different locations on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy. Policies also guide how the assessment of concession applications for aircraft access should be made.

## Animals

Animals are not permitted to be taken onto public conservation land unless it is consistent with legislation and provided for in a conservation management strategy or plan. Domestic animals and pets can have adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values of public conservation lands and waters, and can detract from visitor appreciation and enjoyment. Potential effects include killing wildlife, introducing pest plants, browsing indigenous vegetation, increased erosion and conflicting with other user groups.

### Dogs

The Department controls the use of dogs for recreational activities, including hunting, on public conservation lands and waters to protect both indigenous wildlife and people’s rights of use and enjoyment. It is illegal to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters without a permit unless the area is identified as an ‘open area’ where no permit is required

pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987. The only dogs that do not require permits on public conservation land are those used for police, customs, management, and search and rescue purposes, and guide or companion dogs. Dogs are most commonly used on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy for recreational hunting of deer, pigs, goats and game birds.

To minimise the threat of dogs on public conservation lands and waters, and to improve public understanding of where and under what conditions dogs may be taken onto public conservation lands and waters, the Conservancy intends to develop a dog control policy pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987. The proposed policy will identify three types of areas: (1) controlled areas—no access; (2) controlled areas—access by permit only; and (3) open areas—no permit required but conditions may apply. The conditions applied to both controlled and open areas need to take into account risks to wildlife, the purpose for which the land is held, the content of relevant plans and strategies (including this CMS), and impacts on other users. This policy development will involve public consultation through a process separate from this CMS notification and public submission process. In the interim, the Department has identified several areas in this CMS where dogs are allowed to be taken without a permit (refer policies for dogs below).

Territorial local authorities have the ability through bylaws to control dog access to protect wildlife and important wildlife habitats. The Department seeks to work with local authorities to ensure that bylaws relating to dog access are complementary to controls on dog access on public conservation land.

## **Horses**

In some cases, the use of animals such as horses can enhance the recreational experience of visitors. However, they can have adverse effects as identified above. Authorisation is required to take horses onto public conservation lands and waters.

The level of horse riding on public conservation land in Waikato Conservancy is low. Horses are permitted on several tracks on the Coromandel Peninsula and at Pureora; other locations are subject to authorisations. The Department intends to liaise with horse riding clubs and other known users of the area when considering horse riding opportunities.

## **Private accommodation**

Existing structures on public conservation lands include some private accommodation and related facilities that are not available for use by the general public. Some of these structures have been authorised, but many have been erected and used unlawfully. Under the Conservation General Policy, the use of private accommodation and related facilities is to be phased out, unless they are specifically allowed or provided for in legislation. At the end of the phase-out period, private accommodation and related facilities should be removed unless retained by the Department for public use.

Appendix 16 contains a schedule of all exclusive private accommodation in Waikato Conservancy, its location and the current term of the concession. It also contains information about unauthorised exclusive private accommodation known to the Department.

A number of structures used for exclusive private accommodation are present along the Waikato River. Some of these structures could be located on public conservation land and would have been constructed without authorisation. The Department intends to complete an inventory of all structures on public conservation land along the Waikato River in collaboration with other agencies, and phase out those structures that are used for private accommodation, in accordance with the Conservation General Policy. In addition,

any structures recognised for customary purposes in Waikato River Treaty settlement legislation (refer section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato) will be managed in accordance with that legislation and the Conservation General Policy.

## Marine mammal viewing

Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992. Commercial activities involving marine mammals must be authorised by the Director-General of Conservation.

The majority of Waikato Conservancy's commercial activity involving marine mammals occurs around the Coromandel Peninsula, particularly along the east coast from Whitianga to Whangamata. Hauraki Whānui have a special interest in marine mammals and are actively involved in protection efforts.

Human interaction with marine mammals can have adverse effects, including altering the mammals' behaviour patterns. If research and monitoring of human interactions with marine mammals shows that there is, or may be, adverse effects, management options include reducing activity, discontinuing activity, or seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits.

The Department intends to educate commercial operators about marine mammal viewing requirements and ensure all operators are authorised to undertake marine mammal activities. The Department may also prepare, if necessary, a marine mammal tourism site plan.

## Commercial eeling

The Department is responsible for protecting and preserving tuna/eel within public conservation lands and waters as far as practicable. Tuna/eel have an important role to play in ecosystem functioning, being the top predators in freshwater ecosystems. Commercial eeling, habitat loss and hydro-development can all have potential adverse effects on tuna/eel. Longfin eels are categorised as At Risk in the Declining category.<sup>42</sup>

The Ministry of Fisheries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996, the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001 and other associated regulations. Commercial eel fishers require a concession to access public conservation lands and/or take tuna/eels from waters whose beds are public conservation land. The commercial take of indigenous fauna such as tuna/eels from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is also subject to exceptions contained within section 50(1) of that Act.

Within areas administered under the Conservation Act 1987, other legislative requirements can limit the ability to lawfully grant concessions for commercial eel fishing. For example, an ecological area must be 'managed as to protect the [ecological] value for which the land is held'. Areas held under the Conservation Act 1987 in general are required to be managed so that their natural resources are protected, and tuna/eels are part of those natural resources where they are present.

At the time of writing this CMS, there were no concessions for commercial eel fishing in Waikato Conservancy.

---

<sup>42</sup> Allibone, R.; David, B.; Hitchmough, R.; Jellyman, D.; Ling, N.; Favenscroft, P.; Waters, J. 2010: Conservation status of New Zealand freshwater fish 2009. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research* 44(4): 272-287.

## Sports fish and game

Waters on public conservation lands are often recognised as a valuable recreational asset for anglers. Where sports fish are present, they may be retained. However, in certain circumstances they may be eradicated with the agreement of the relevant regional fish and game council (Conservation General Policy 2005: policy 4.2(d)).

In Waikato Conservancy, both trout and coarse fishing opportunities are available. Coarse fishing is popular at Whangamarino Wetland and several other wetlands administered by the Department. The Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Councils manage sport fishing in Waikato Conservancy. The headwaters of many rivers and streams, particularly on the Coromandel Peninsula and in the King Country, are on public conservation land and are valued for trout fishing. Examples include the Kaniwhaniwha Stream (Pirongia), Kauaeranga River (Coromandel Peninsula) and river systems in the King Country, such as the Tawarau, Awakino and Mangaotaki Rivers.

The Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Councils also manage game bird hunting. The Department, however, has a responsibility to provide for game bird hunting on public conservation lands and waters where such hunting is consistent with the purposes for which the lands and waters are held, and does not have adverse effects on protected indigenous species. Public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy provide numerous opportunities for game bird hunting, and with its high concentration of wetlands and lake habitats, the Conservancy has some of the most highly valued waterfowl hunting sites in New Zealand (refer section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands in Part Two—Places).

## Authorisations

Anyone wishing to carry out a trade, occupation or business on public conservation lands and waters requires an authorisation. The most common authorisation is given as a concession under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987. The Department aims to allow for a range of authorisations that are consistent with relevant legislation and policy, the protection of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and the recreational settings and planned outcomes for specific Places. Authorisations can add value to visitors' experiences by connecting them with natural, historic and cultural heritage, and providing opportunities to visit places that may not otherwise be easily accessible.

Waikato Conservancy has granted, under delegation, authorisations for a range of activities, including filming, grazing, telecommunications, access/easements, and recreation and tourism activities such as guiding, sporting events, education camps, and the sale of goods and services to the public.

The monitoring of authorised activities is required. Where authorised activity is beginning to reach, or has already reached, the environmental and/or social carrying capacity of a place, the Department may limit the amount of activity that can occur in that place.

Monitoring is particularly required at locations where there is visitor or commercial pressure, the potential effects of which could compromise the experience of other visitors, or the natural and heritage values of those places. Monitoring may also be required for concessions in areas that are rarely visited or are managed for remote experiences.

Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Minister of Conservation has the consenting role for all Crown land administered by the Department. All applications for access arrangements to minerals on public conservation lands and waters will be considered under section 61(1A) (where applicable) and 61(2) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Mining in areas of high ecological, scenic, scientific, cultural, recreational and historic value is generally

inappropriate due to the potential adverse effects on those values. Any compensation will be assessed in accordance with the Crown Minerals Act 1991.

### **Sand and shingle extraction**

Sand and shingle extraction from riverbeds and beaches is managed and allocated by regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991. On public conservation lands and waters, however, these activities also require authorisation from the Department. At the time of writing this CMS, sand and shingle extraction does not occur on public conservation land within Waikato Conservancy.

### **Filming**

Commercial filming and photography is defined as any photography or filming undertaken on public conservation land for any form of gain or reward. Filming activity has a specific set of effects that need to be managed. The majority of filming productions on public conservation land have been of small to medium scale, with the exception of a few feature films (e.g. Lord of the Rings). A similar level of filming activity occurs in Waikato Conservancy, and includes still photography, and filming for tourism campaigns, adventure/sporting activities, advertisements and the occasional feature film (e.g. Narnia). A large proportion of this filming activity occurs on the Coromandel Peninsula.

## **Collection of material**

Applications for the collection of material for research and information needs are addressed in, and must be consistent with, the Conservation General Policy 2005 (section 12: Research and information needs).

The collection of material from public conservation lands and water also includes customary activities of significance to tangata whenua (refer section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities). Treaty settlement legislation also recognises the significance of customary activities to tangata whenua and in many instances specifies processes for customary use of materials managed under conservation legislation, e.g. the Reserves Act 1977.

## **Maimai (including shooting stands and temporary shelters)**

Waterfowl hunting has traditionally been associated with the use of structures to provide shelter and cover during the hunting season. While these structures are generally only used seasonally, they are often permanent fixtures.

Although an authorisation is not required for these structures if they meet construction guidelines<sup>43</sup>, consent must be obtained from the relevant area office to construct a maimai on public conservation lands to ensure that the proposed location will not compromise conservation and other recreational values in that area—otherwise it may face the risk of removal. Construction on public conservation land of maimai that do not meet construction guidelines requires a concession from the Department.

Any use of maimai for overnight accommodation on public conservation land requires a concession from the Department (refer Policies 3.9.1 to 3.9.8 (private accommodation)).

---

<sup>43</sup> Lawrie, D n.d.: Maimai guidelines: construction guidelines for permanent maimai. Pamphlet. Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Council. Land Information New Zealand and the Department of Conservation, Hamilton, New Zealand.

## Wild animal control activities

The Minister of Conservation has responsibility for implementing the statutory purpose of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 through:

- the granting of concessions for wild animal recovery operations;
- permits for ground hunting; and
- provision for recreational hunting (with the Director-General).

Both commercial recovery operations and recreational hunting are undertaken in Waikato Conservancy, and there have been conflicting views around these activities. The Department intends to manage commercial animal recovery and recreational hunting to enable the effective control of wild animals, and to minimise conflicts between wild animal control activities and other users of public conservation land.

### **POLICIES**

#### *General*

- 3.1.1 Manage public conservation lands and waters to be consistent with the statutory purpose for which they are held.
- 3.1.2 Ensure the classification or statutory purpose of public conservation land and water reflects its values.
- 3.1.3 Prioritise and undertake conservation management in accordance with the Department's national priorities.
- 3.1.4 Close access to public conservation lands and water where necessary to:
  - a) protect natural, historic or cultural heritage;
  - b) protect public safety;
  - c) control biosecurity risks;
  - d) enable the eradication of pests using aerial bait operations;
  - e) allow military exercise operations;
  - f) protect a species, or a historic or cultural site; or
  - g) allow tree felling.
- 3.1.5 When undertaking work or activities that are covered by Appendix 1, determine if they meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemption from land use consents.

#### *Motorised vehicles—General (CGP 9.5(b))<sup>44</sup>*

- 3.2.1 Should permit motorised vehicles on roads purposefully formed and maintained for vehicle use and in car parks on public conservation land, unless otherwise stated in Part Two: Places. Access may be restricted at any time in the following situations:

---

<sup>44</sup> Bylaws or regulations will be required to implement restrictions relevant to the management of vehicles.



- a) there is health and safety risk;
  - b) there is fire risk;
  - c) adverse effects are evident on conservation values; or
  - d) priorities change for the maintenance of the formed road or designated vehicular track.
- 3.2.2 Consider provision for use of motorised vehicles outside areas provided for by Policy 3.2.1 only where it is identified at sites listed in Part Two—Places and subject to Policy 3.2.4.
- 3.2.3 May permit motorised vehicles on public conservation lands for the construction and/or maintenance of utilities, farming operations, and restoration activities.
- 3.2.4 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purpose for which the land is held;
  - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, track or site is located;
  - c) is consistent with the visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 13;
  - d) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the track and surrounding natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised;
  - e) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users are avoided, or otherwise minimised (including conflicts between vehicles / mountain bikes and horses);
  - f) risks of fire and biosecurity are avoided; and
  - g) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle access (e.g. in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account.
- 3.2.5 Liaise with four-wheel drive and bike groups and may enable these groups to maintain the roads they use.
- 3.2.6 Work with councils and the Police to manage motorised vehicle use on beaches.
- 3.2.7 Develop bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to control the use of motorised vehicles within Waikato Conservancy.
- 3.2.8 Monitor the effects of motorised vehicles on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.
- 3.2.9 Review the use of motorised vehicles on roads where monitoring shows that unacceptable impacts are occurring.

### ***Mountain bikes***

- 3.3.1 Should allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, on the tracks and roads or other areas listed in Part Two—Places and on the Hakarimata Rail Trail, subject to the criteria specified in Policy 3.3.5.

- 3.3.2 Require people using mountain bikes to adhere to the 'Mountain Bikers' Code' and, where mountain biking is restricted to identified tracks or roads, require mountain bikers to remain on the track or road formation at all times.
- 3.3.3 Develop bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to enable enforcement of the mountain biking provisions.
- 3.3.4 Promote opportunities for mountain bike use on tracks identified as being available for mountain bike use on public conservation lands via the Department's website, and through liaison with tourism information providers and cycling advocates.
- 3.3.5 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of mountain bikes on public conservation lands and waters:
  - a) is consistent with the statutory purpose for which the land is held;
  - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place in which the proposed application will occur;
  - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic, or cultural heritage values and other recreational users of the track or road are avoided or otherwise mitigated—this may include (but is not limited to) restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers, and one-way flow; and
  - d) the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight mountain bike opportunities are taken into account.
- 3.3.6 May consider further opportunities for mountain bike use on public conservation land during the term of this CMS by updating the tracks and roads listed in Policy 3.3.1 and the sites listed in Part Two—Places after consultation with cycling clubs, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs and the public, and in accordance with the following criteria:
  - a) is consistent with the statutory purpose for which the land is held;
  - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place where the formed track or road is or will be located;
  - c) potential adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic, or cultural and heritage values and other recreational users of the track or road can be avoided or otherwise minimised;
  - d) there are measures to manage the use of mountain bikes, which may include, but are not limited to, restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers and one-way flow; and
  - e) there is the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight cycle opportunities.
- 3.3.7 Monitor the effects of mountain bike use on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.
- 3.3.8 Review mountain bike use on tracks or at sites where monitoring shows that unacceptable impacts are occurring.
- 3.3.9 Should not allow 'thrill seeker' styles of mountain biking where they will result in conflicts with other users, and/or impacts on natural, historic, cultural or heritage values.

### ***Watercraft***

- 3.4.1 Meet the following criteria when considering watercraft use on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purpose for which the land/waters is held;
  - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where watercraft use is located;
  - c) is consistent with the visitor management zone on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 13;
  - d) potential adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
  - e) potential adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users on and off the water are avoided, or otherwise minimised.
- 3.4.2 Consider controlling access to waters from public conservation land to manage any adverse impacts associated with watercraft use.
- 3.4.3 Advocate for the management of watercraft use in a way that is consistent with Parts One and Two of this CMS, on waters not managed by the Department.

### ***Aircraft (CGP 9.5(b))***

- 3.5.1 Should allow aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation lands and waters, in accordance with Map 4 which identifies zones where aircraft can land or take off, and the descriptions of those zones in Appendix 15, and subject to the policies and criteria below.
- 3.5.2 Criteria for considering concession applications for the landing or taking off of aircraft may include (but not be limited to) the following:
- a) the outcome and policies for the Place (if the application is within a Place) or Policy 3.5.12 (if the application is outside a Place);
  - b) relevant aircraft zoning provisions;
  - c) the purpose for which the land is held;
  - d) effects on conservation values, including natural quiet;
  - e) effects on other visitors (taking into account the size of zone and the proximity of other ground users);
  - f) compliance with the NZ Aviation Industry Association's (NZAIA's) AIRCARE Safety Programme or equivalent and the Fly Neighbourly protocol;
  - g) the need for monitoring using new technologies; and
  - h) consideration of whether landings should or should not occur within 50 m of tracks, huts, car parks or campsites unless otherwise specified in Part Two—Places.
- 3.5.3 An application for a concession for aircraft use in the Red Zone should be declined unless it is for the following purposes:
- a) maintenance of approved equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic, communication systems); or
  - b) to support a research and collection permit (with area manager agreement).

- 3.5.4 An application for a concession for aircraft use in the Yellow Zone must be considered against the following limits in addition to the criteria in Policy 3.5.2:
- a) limits for the whole zone of two landings per operator per day at any one site (defined as within a 1-km radius) and a maximum of 20 landings per site per operator per year.
- 3.5.5 An application for a concession for aircraft use in the following Orange Zones must be considered against the criteria and limits specified in Part Two—Places in addition to the criteria in Policy 3.5.2:
- a) Cuvier Island (Repanga Island);
  - b) Motutapere Island;
  - c) Rabbit Island;
  - d) Public conservation land on Whanganui Island;
  - e) Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place; and
  - f) Pureora Place.
- 3.5.6 An application for a sports event or filming that does not meet the criteria for the Yellow, Orange or Green aircraft zones and/or the prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 13 may be granted on its merits, subject to an assessment of:
- a) the activity being consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place and Policy 3.5.12;
  - b) the potential adverse effects, and the extent to which it is possible to avoid, remedy or mitigate those effects—examples of mechanisms that may be used to address any adverse effects include:
    - (i) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the activity is to occur and is occurring;
    - (ii) avoiding peak visitation times;
    - (iii) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural or historic values;
  - c) cumulative effects on the values at the Place; and
  - d) the appropriateness of public notification.
- 3.5.7 All concessions granted for aircraft take-off and landing should require operators to be accredited under the NZAIA's AIRCARE programme or equivalent.
- 3.5.8 In its own operations, the Department will use operators who are accredited under the NZAIA's AIRCARE programme or equivalent.
- 3.5.9 Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators to manage flight paths to avoid effects on public conservation lands.
- 3.5.10 Should permit aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation lands for the construction and/or maintenance of utilities authorised by concession.
- 3.5.11 Undertake a cooperative approach with air operators overflying public conservation lands and waters, to establish voluntary codes of conduct that reflect the visitor management settings of those lands and waters.
- 3.5.12 Manage aircraft activity at locations outside Part Two—Places on the following basis:

- a) Aotea Heads Scientific Reserve, Kawhia Harbour Scenic Reserves (Te Arero, Te Umuroa, Waikaraka, Rakaunui, Awaroa, Motu Tara, Puti), Kakepuku Mountain above the 600-m contour line, Matariki Wildlife Management Reserve and Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve (Red Zone)—no aircraft activity, except as specified for the Red Zone in Policy 3.5.3 and Appendix 15;
- b) Hakarimata Range, Kakepuku Mountain, Meremere Pā (Yellow Zone)—occasional aircraft activity, with limits as specified for the Yellow Zone in Policy 3.5.4 and Appendix 15;
- c) Hapuakohe Range, Te Tapui, Maungakawa (Cambridge), Mangaotama/Kakariki, Bryant Memorial Scenic Reserve (Raglan) and Omaru Falls (Green Zone)—occasional aircraft activity, with infrequent bursts of aircraft activity from time to time as specified in Appendix 15;
- d) Mapara (Yellow Zone)—occasional aircraft activity with limits as specified for the Yellow Zone in Policy 3.5.4 and Appendix 15, and with the additional condition that all aircraft activity should only occur between 10 am and 3 pm from 1 September to 31 October (inclusive) in any year; and
- e) all other locations—regular aircraft activity, as specified for the Green Zone in Appendix 15.

***Dogs (CGP 9.6(a))***

- 3.6.1 Allow dogs to be taken onto the following public conservation lands and waters, provided they are under control at all times:
  - a) Booms Flat and Hotoritori campsites (Kauaeranga Valley); and
  - b) Wentworth Valley campsite (southern Coromandel).
- 3.6.2 When considering whether to issue an authorisation to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters, regard should be had to the following matters:
  - a) the actual or potential risk to protected wildlife, including at both a population and individual level, in or in the vicinity of the public conservation land in respect of the authorisation sought;
  - b) the purpose for which the public conservation land is held;
  - c) the need to preserve the safety of members of the public likely to be on or in the vicinity of public conservation land;
  - d) any conflict between dogs or people with dogs;
  - e) other users of the public conservation land, including visitor experiences; and
  - f) whether a dog is essential for the proposed activity, including recreational hunting and threat management purposes.
- 3.6.3 Ensure that permits to take dogs onto public conservation lands and waters contain conditions that protect the values for which those lands and waters are held.
- 3.6.4 Educate the community about the threats dogs can pose to conservation values.
- 3.6.5 Work with local authorities to ensure consistency in dog control in areas containing protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats.

- 3.6.6 Where a person has been authorised to take a dog onto public conservation lands, that authorisation may be subject to the following conditions:
- a) owners will be required to keep the dog under control at all times;
  - b) dogs must not go into or be under public buildings, including huts; and
  - c) dogs must be currently certified by an approved bird aversion trainer where there are ground-dwelling or nesting birds (except for guide or companions dogs).
- 3.6.7 Develop a dog control policy pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987, in consultation with the public, to identify areas on public conservation lands and waters where dogs may be taken without compromising the values of those areas. When identifying areas where dogs may be taken, consider whether the entry by dogs:
- a) is likely to adversely affect the values for which the lands or waters are administered, protected wildlife, and other users of the public conservation lands and waters; and
  - b) is unlikely to adversely affect the values for which the lands or waters are administered, protected wildlife, and other users of the public conservation land and waters.
- 3.6.8 Manage dog access in accordance with the controlled and open dog areas when identified in accordance with Policy 3.6.7.
- 3.6.9 Inform the public of the location of controlled and open dog areas on public conservation lands and waters through the Department's website when identified in accordance with Policy 3.6.7.

***Horses (CGP 9.6(a))***

- 3.7.1 Should allow the use of horses only at identified sites listed in Part Two—Places.
- 3.7.2 Meet the following criteria when considering the use of horses on public conservation lands:
- a) is consistent with the purpose for which the land is held;
  - b) the potential for horses to introduce or spread new weed species into the area is avoided;
  - c) the potential for horses to accelerate erosion or cause other damage to the area is avoided;
  - d) potential adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
  - e) potential adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.
- 3.7.3 Should monitor the level of horse riding on public conservation land. If monitoring indicates that horse riding is causing adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values or the visitor experience, will consider management options to limit horse riding.

### ***Other animals (CGP 9.6(a))***

- 3.8.1 Should not permit livestock, other than horses in accordance with Policies 3.7.1-3.7.2, on public conservation lands unless under a grazing concession.
- 3.8.2 Should not permit any other types of animals, including pets, on public conservation lands or waters.

### ***Authorisations (CGP 11)***

- 3.9.1 Issue authorisations in accordance with the provisions of the Conservation General Policy 2005.
- 3.9.2 Monitor authorised activities and their effects, including cumulative effects, on a regular and ongoing basis.
- 3.9.3 Establish limits for authorised opportunities where demand approaches or exceeds the environmental or social carrying capacity of a place and/or cumulative effects are becoming unacceptable, and manage through an allocative process.
- 3.9.4 Should not grant authorisations that are inconsistent with the objectives in Part One or the outcomes and policies for Places described in Part Two—Places.
- 3.9.5 The following criteria will be used when considering new permanent structures or the adaptive reuse of existing buildings on public conservation lands and waters:
  - a) the outcome and policies for the Place (if the authorisation is within a Place);
  - b) whether the structure could reasonably be located outside public conservation lands;
  - c) whether the structure could reasonably be located in another location where there are fewer potential adverse effects;
  - d) whether the structure adversely affects conservation and recreational values;
  - e) whether the structure is readily available for public use;
  - f) whether the structure is consistent with the visitor management zone on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 13;
  - g) whether the structure enhances the visitor experience;
  - h) whether the activity promotes or enhances the retention of an historic building; and
  - i) whether the activity is a suitable adaptive reuse of an existing building.
- 3.9.6 Consider applications for access arrangements on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the criteria set out in the relevant section (i.e. s61 or s61A and s61B) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.
- 3.9.7 Assess applications for access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, in accordance with (but not limited to) the following matters:
  - a) the significance of the conservation values and recreation opportunities present, and the effect the proposal will have on those values;
  - b) the adequacy and achievability of the proposed site rehabilitation work; and
  - c) the adequacy or appropriateness of compensation offered for access to the area.



- 3.9.8 Review the conditions of access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 if monitoring reveals that the effects of mining activities on conservation values and recreation opportunities are greater than expected or new effects are discovered.

***Private accommodation (CGP 10)***

- 3.10.1 Should not authorise new private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters.
- 3.10.2 Should phase out all existing private accommodation on public conservation land that is not specifically allowed or provided for in legislation by either:
- a) phasing in public use of the building(s) (refer Policy 3.10.4a); or
  - b) removing the building(s) at the end of the phase-out period (refer Policy 3.10.4b), unless retained by the Department for public use.
- 3.10.3 Should consult the Waikato Conservation Board and the concession applicant when assessing a concession application for existing private accommodation, to determine whether it should be granted and, if so, which of the two phase-out methods (Policies 3.10.2a or 3.10.2b) is most appropriate for each individual circumstance.
- 3.10.4 If private accommodation is to be authorised in accordance with Policy 3.10.2, concession conditions should specify that:
- a) the building(s) are to be made available, where appropriate, for use by the public—with specific details on how this requirement will be phased in over time stated in each individual concession (if option 3.10.2a is chosen); or
  - b) the building(s) are to be removed<sup>45</sup> on the death of the person named on the authorisation at the time the CMS is publicly notified, or within 20 years of CMS approval, whichever occurs first (if option 3.10.2b is chosen); and
  - c) the style and character of all buildings are to remain largely unmodified; and
  - d) the floor area and footprint of all buildings is not to increase beyond that existing at the time of CMS approval; and
  - e) all buildings must comply with all relevant local authority requirements; and
  - f) transfer/assignment to another party should not be authorised (i.e. the building(s) cannot be sold or transferred to anyone else); and
  - g) an indemnity is given by the concessionaire and the concessionaire holds adequate insurance (e.g. general public liability insurance, statutory liability insurance) to cover this indemnity.
- 3.10.5 Should only grant the renewal<sup>46</sup> of authorisations for private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters to the existing authorisation holder<sup>47</sup>, if:

---

<sup>45</sup> Unless retained by the Department for public use / active management of historic and cultural heritage values.

<sup>46</sup> Where the existing/previous concession does not contain a right of renewal and is due to expire (or has expired) and the authorisation holder applies for a new concession, the application should be considered against the other policies in this section and the relevant general policy.

<sup>47</sup> I.e. should not grant transfers/assignments to other parties.

- a) the existing authorisation contains a right of renewal; and
- b) the right of renewal is exercised by the authorisation holder before the existing authority expires; and
- c) the person holding the authorisation has complied with all of the terms and conditions of the authorisation; and
- d) any new authorisation is granted before the existing authorisation expires.

3.10.6 Should not authorise replacement of private accommodation if:

- a) a building falls into such a state of disrepair that it needs work that requires a building consent under the Building Act 2004 (note, minor repair and maintenance using comparable materials does not require building consent under this Act); or
- b) buildings are destroyed or so damaged by an event (e.g. fire, flood) as to render them untenable.

3.10.7 Remove buildings not authorised in accordance with Policy 3.10.2 from public conservation lands and waters no later than 5 years after CMS approval.

3.10.8 Undertake an inventory of structures (private huts, temporary shelters, maimai and other structures) located on public conservation land along the Waikato River by 2019, and manage those structures in accordance with Policies 3.10.1 to 3.10.6, Policy 13.16.1 and relevant Treaty settlement legislation.

3.10.9 Remove buildings located on public conservation land along the Waikato River that are not authorised in accordance with Policies 3.10.2, 3.10.8 and 13.16.1 or relevant Treaty settlement legislation by 2024.

#### ***Marine mammals***

- 3.11.1 Support research into and monitoring of the impacts of human interactions with marine mammals.
- 3.11.2 Take a precautionary approach to the number of commercial operators involved in marine mammal operations, including seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits if research and monitoring indicates that such a step is required.
- 3.11.3 Ensure all commercial operators viewing marine mammals are authorised to undertake that activity, and that they understand their responsibilities under marine mammal protection legislation and regulations.
- 3.11.4 Require commercial operators viewing marine mammals to provide a high standard of education and interpretation.
- 3.11.5 Consider preparing and reviewing at regular intervals a marine mammal tourism site plan for Waikato Conservancy, which sets out desired objectives for management of the marine mammal tourism industry.

#### ***Sand and shingle (CGP 11.4(c))***

- 3.12.1 Should only authorise sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands and waters where adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
- 3.12.2 Will use the following criteria when considering sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands and waters:

- a) consistent with the purpose for which the land is held;
- b) consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place where the road, track or site is located;
- c) consistent with the visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 13;
- d) potential adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
- e) potential adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.

#### ***Commercial eeling***

- 3.13.1 Should not authorise commercial eeling on public conservation lands or waters, to ensure the preservation of tuna/eel species.
- 3.13.2 Work cooperatively with the Ministry of Primary Industries, tangata whenua and the community to protect indigenous tuna/eel populations and their habitats on public conservation lands and waters.

#### ***Sports fish and game (CGP 9.4)***

- 3.14.1 Work with the Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Councils on the management of sports fisheries and game birds.

#### ***Filming (CGP 11.5)***

- 3.15.1 Concession applications for filming activity on public conservation land located outside national parks should be tested against the following criteria:
  - a) conflicts between recreation/tourism uses and filming activity should be avoided (e.g. separated in space and time) or otherwise minimised;
  - b) conservation values, including sites of significance to tangata whenua, should be protected from adverse effects of filming and associated activities;
  - c) aircraft use for filming activity purposes should comply with the CMS aircraft provisions, including the aircraft zone provisions;
  - d) vehicle use for filming activities should comply with the CMS vehicle provisions; and
  - e) filming activity should be compatible/consistent with the outcomes and policies for Places.
- 3.15.2 All filming concessions should include reference to and compliance with the latest version of the 'Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands' (jointly developed by the Department and Film New Zealand) and (where aircraft are used) a requirement for operators to be accredited under the NZAIA's AIRCARE programme as a condition of the concession.
- 3.15.3 All filming concessions should include reference to the relevant guidelines for filming within iwi boundaries as a condition of the permit.

### ***Collection of material (CGP 12(d))***

- 3.16.1 Should only authorise the collection of material from public conservation lands or waters in accordance with the criteria listed within the Conservation General Policy 2005, section 12(d).

### ***Maimai (including shooting stands and temporary shelters)***

- 3.17.1 May allow maimai, shooting stands and temporary shelters on public conservation lands within Waikato Conservancy provided that:
- a) they are constructed in accordance with relevant construction guidelines and/or requirements, including the Waikato construction guidelines for permanent maimai;
  - b) indigenous vegetation is not destroyed in the process of erecting the maimai/shelter;
  - c) ecologically sensitive sites are avoided and other adverse impacts minimised;
  - d) they do not interfere with wider public enjoyment of the area; and
  - e) they are not intended for overnight accommodation.

### ***Wild animal control activities***

- 3.18.1 Concession applications and activities on public conservation land under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 should be tested against the following criteria:
- a) the contribution to concerted action (achieving the purpose of the Wild Animal Control Act);
  - b) the outcome and policies for the Place (if the application is within a Place);
  - c) relevant aircraft zoning provisions;
  - d) relevant visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 13;
  - e) the purpose for which the land is held;
  - f) effects on conservation values, including national priority areas for ecosystems and species, surrounding lands, and natural quiet;
  - g) effects on other visitors, including safety;
  - h) the presence or otherwise of an Animal Health Board TB control programme;
  - i) cumulative effects;
  - j) frequency, timing and location of the activity; and
  - k) other relevant matters.
- 3.18.2 If a concession under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 is to be authorised in accordance with Policy 3.18.1, concession conditions should specify that:
- a) activities should not be conducted at the specified locations listed in Table 4;

- b) activities should not be conducted during the period 15 March to 30 April (inclusive) in any year at the locations listed in Table 4; and
- c) activities should not be conducted during the period 1 April to 31 July (inclusive) in any year at the locations listed in Table 4.

#### **MILESTONES—OUTPUTS**

##### **Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)**

- The Waikato Conservancy dog control policy has been developed and is operational.

##### **Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)**

- An inventory of structures located on public conservation land along the Waikato River has been completed.

##### **Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)**

- Structures on public conservation land along the Waikato River have been either authorised in accordance with relevant legislation or removed.

Table 4 Locations where activities under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 are restricted in Waikato Conservancy.

LOCATION	RESTRICTIONS
That part of the Pureora Forest Park that includes the Pikiariki Ecological Area and Pureora Village Part of Conservation Area—Whareorino Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve Mangapohue Natural Bridge Scenic Reserve Marokopa Falls Scenic Reserve Piripiri Caves Scenic Reserve Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve Waitomo Caves Scenic Reserve Waituhi-Kuratau Scenic Reserve Whangamarino Government Purpose Reserve Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve Torehape Wetland Management Reserve Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve Flax Block Wildlife Management Reserve Opuatia Swamp Wildlife Management Reserve Te Miro Scenic Reserve Te Tapui Scenic Reserve Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) Nature Reserve Double Island Nature Reserve Repanga (Cuvier) Island Nature Reserve Stanley Island Nature Reserve Green Island Scenic Reserve Korapuki Scenic Reserve Middle Island Scenic Reserve Red Mercury Island Scenic Reserve	These sites are excluded for wild animal recovery under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 to ensure that ecological and recreational values (including public safety) are not compromised. (Note: This list may change over the life of this strategy.)
Pureora Recreational Hunting Area	Authorisations under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 will be considered on a case-by-case basis for this location.
Pureora Forest Park Conservation Area—Pureora The Cowan wildlife Refuge The Meyer Wildlife Refuge Reserve	Authorised commercial activity under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 shall not be conducted at these sites during the period 15 March to 30 April (inclusive) each year.
Awaroa Swamp Wetland Management Reserve Lake Rotongaro Wildlife Management Reserve Lake Waikare Wildlife Management Reserve Lake Whangape Wildlife Management Reserve Conservation Area—Kopuku Stream Conservation Area—Lake Ohinewai Conservation Area—Lake Rotokawau Conservation Area—Lake Waikare Conservation Area—Te Kauwhata Conservation Area—Waikato River and Waikato River Islands Meremere Pa Historic Reserve Island Block Recreation Reserve South Shore Recreation Reserve	Authorised commercial activity under the Wildlife Animal Control Act 1977 shall not be conducted at these sites during the period 1 April to 31 July (inclusive) each year.

# Part Four— Implementation, monitoring, reporting and review

The Department of Conservation uses many different tools to implement conservation management strategies, including:

- The Department’s business planning processes, where decisions are made about priorities and resourcing for the business activities undertaken in a conservancy
- Decisions on concessions and other authorisations.

Monitoring implementation will assist in determining the success of the provisions of this Conservation Management Strategy. The Department reports regularly to the Waikato Conservation Board on the implementation of the Waikato CMS, and the Conservation Board, in turn, reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority.

## **OBJECTIVE**

- 4.1.1 To report at least annually on progress in achieving the milestones of the Waikato CMS to the Waikato Conservation Board on the implementation of this CMS.



# Glossary

## ***Actively conserved historic place***

Historically significant site that is managed by the Department to preserve and maintain its historic features.

## ***Aircraft***

Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air, other than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the Earth (Civil Aviation Act 1990).

## ***All terrain vehicle (ATV)***

A special purpose vehicle (with or without motorcycle controls and equipment) that:

- a) is principally designed for off-road use; and
- b) has three or more wheels; and
- c) has an engine capacity exceeding 50 mL; and
- d) has a gross weight of less than 1000 kg.

(Land Transport (Driver Licensing) Rule 1999: Section 2)

## ***Animal***

Any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind; but does not include a human being (Reserves Act 1977: section 2; National Parks Act 1980: section 2).

Any member of the animal kingdom other than a human being (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

## ***Archaeological site***

Any place in New Zealand that:

- a) Either:
  - (i) was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or
  - (ii) is the site of a wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and
- b) Is or may be able through investigation by archaeological means to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand.

(Historic Places Act 1993)

## ***At risk (species)***

Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the 'Threatened' species categories, but are declining (though buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status, or survive only in relictual populations.

## ***Authorisation***

Collective term for all types of approvals by the Minister and the Director-General of Conservation provided for in a statutory process (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Backcountry destination***

Destination that provides for more challenging adventures for visitors, including popular walks and tramps, within the body of large-scale natural settings. Refer to prescriptions in Appendix 13 for more detail.

### ***Biodiversity***

The variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems, and ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Biogenic reefs***

Elevated structures on the seabed constructed of living and dead organisms. Include fragile erect bryozoans and other sessile suspension feeders. Examples are bryozoan beds, rhodolith beds, tube worm mounds, sponge gardens and cold-water corals. These communities develop in a range of habitats, from exposed open coasts to estuaries, marine inlets and deeper offshore habitats, and may be found in a variety of sediment types and salinity regimes (Marine Protected Areas: Classification, Protection Standard and Implementation Guidelines 2008).

### ***Biosecurity***

The exclusion, eradication or effective management of risks posed by pests and diseases to the economy, environment and human health (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Building***

Has the same meaning as given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the Building Act 2004 (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Bylaw***

A bylaw made by the Minister of Conservation, by notice in the New Zealand Gazette, under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves, whereas regulations may apply to conservation areas.

### ***Companion dog***

A dog certified by the Top Dog Companion Trust as being a companion dog or a dog under training as a companion dog (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Concession***

A lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business on areas managed by the Department of Conservation (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Concessionaire***

A person who is a lessee, licensee, permit holder or grantee of an easement.

### ***Conservancy***

The Department has 11 conservancy offices, which are administratively responsible for separate geographic areas that cover the whole of New Zealand (including islands). The boundaries of Waikato Conservancy are shown on the “Conservancy Overview Map” in Volume II.

### ***Conservation***

The preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Conservation board***

Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987, and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of conservation management strategies and national park management plans for their areas, approval of conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority or Director-General of the Department of Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area, and advising on new walkways. They also have an important conservation advocacy role.

### ***Conservation General Policy***

A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Acts listed in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act 1987. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters, and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Conservation legislation***

A term that applies collectively to the statutes that are administered by the Department, including the Conservation Act 1987, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

### ***Conservation management***

Conservation management work includes the Department’s (and its contractors) hut and track servicing, species and habitat protection, introduced animal and weed control, monitoring, and historical and cultural heritage work, and may include authorised research.

### ***Conservation management plan***

A plan for the management of natural and historic resources, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes, which implements a conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within a place or places specified in a conservation management strategy (Conservation Act 1987: section 17E).

### ***Conservation management strategy***

The purpose of a conservation management strategy is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 or the Conservation Act 1987, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes (Conservation Act 1987: section 17D).

### ***Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)***

An international agreement on biological diversity that came into force in December 1993 following a meeting of governments in Rio de Janeiro. The objectives of the Convention are the conservation of biological diversity; the sustainable use of its components; and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising out of the utilisation of genetic resources.

### ***Cultural***

Societal values with an emphasis on New Zealand/European history and Māori tikanga that are handed down through the generations. (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

### ***Cumulative effect***

An effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects (Resource Management Act 1991: section 3).

### ***Customary use***

Gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua according to tikanga (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Department, the***

The Department of Conservation.

### ***Destination management***

A programme aimed at getting more people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses the Department on five key areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences that the public will want to enjoy; optimising resources; working with others in order to provide recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters; and improving marketing and promotion of destinations.

### ***Director-General***

The Director-General of Conservation.

### ***Ecological integrity***

The full potential of indigenous biotic and abiotic factors, and natural processes, functioning in sustainable habitats, ecosystems and landscapes.

### ***Ecosystem***

A biological system comprising a community of living organisms and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Ecosystem services***

A wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help to sustain and fulfil life (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Effect***

The term effect includes:

- any positive or adverse effect; and
- any temporary or permanent effect; and
- any past, present, or future effect; and
- any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects,

regardless of the scale, intensity, duration or frequency of the effect; and also includes:

- any potential effect of high probability; and
- any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.

(Resource Management Act 1991: section 3)

### ***Encampment***

Non-designated site used for the purpose of shelter or camping on either:

- a) a permanent or semi-permanent basis by private individuals or groups; or
- b) for more than short-term use by private individuals or groups.

(Conservation General Policy 2005)

### ***Endemic***

A species which is native to, as well as restricted to, a particular natural area (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

### ***Eradicate***

To remove completely (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Facilities, recreational***

Facilities that enable people to enjoy a range of recreational opportunities, including (but not limited to) visitor and information centres, camping areas, tracks and walkways, bridges, backcountry huts, roads, car-parking areas, toilets, picnic areas, signs and interpretation panels, viewing platforms, wharves, and boat ramps (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Fish***

Includes all species of finfish and shellfish, at any stage of their life history, whether living or dead (Fisheries Act 1996).

### ***Fish and Game Council***

Statutory body with functions pertaining to the management, maintenance and enhancement of the sports fish and game resource in the recreational interests of anglers and hunters (Conservation Act 1987: section 26P).

### ***Fishery***

One or more stocks or parts of stocks or one or more species of freshwater fish or aquatic life that can be treated as a unit for the purposes of conservation or management (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Foreshore***

Such parts of the bed, shore or banks of a tidal water as are covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Four-wheel drive road***

A road or route that can be traversed by a standard four-wheel drive vehicle able to handle conditions including grade and side slopes, width, surface material, waterway fords, entry and exit angles to fords and depressions, and seasonal snow and ice, without damage to the vehicle or excessive wear of the road or route. The road or route, through maintenance and managed traffic densities and/or seasonal closures, is able to be retained at this four-wheel drive standard, and is able to be shared with other vehicles, including trail bikes and mountain bikes.

### ***Freshwater fish***

Includes finfish of the classes Agnatha and Osteichthyes, and shellfish of the classes Mollusca and Crustacea, that must, at any time in the life history of the species, inhabit freshwater; and includes finfish and shellfish that seasonally migrate into and out of freshwater (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Game***

The wildlife declared to be game specified in the First Schedule to the Wildlife Act 1953. As at the date of the adoption of this Conservation Management Strategy, all game species are birds, viz: black swan (*Cygnus atratus*), kuihi/Canada goose (*Branta canadensis*), chukar (*Alectoris chukar*), pārerera/grey duck (*Anas superciliosa*), mallard duck (*Anas platyrhynchos*), pūtangitangi/paradise duck (*Tadorna variegata*), spoonbill duck (*Anas clypeata*), partridge (*Perdix perdix*), red-legged partridge (*Alectoris rufa*), peihana/pheasant (*Phasianus colchicus*), pūkeko (*Poryphio poryphio melanotus*), Australian quail (*Coturnix ypsilophora*), koera/Californian quail (*Callipepla californica*) and Virginian quail (*Colinus virginianus*).

### ***Gateway destination***

A destination that helps to introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allows them to learn about conservation. These destinations may provide for a diverse range of activities but include many traditional camping and tramping destinations. The term 'gateway visitor destination' has the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy.

### ***Guide dog***

A dog certified by the Royal New Zealand Foundation of the Blind as being a guide dog or a dog under training as a guide dog (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Habitat***

The environment within which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Historical and cultural heritage***

Any building or other structure, archaeological site, natural feature, wāhi tapu, or object, associated with people, traditions, events or ideas, which contributes to an understanding of New Zealand's history and cultures (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Historic place***

a) Means:

- (i) any land (including an archaeological site); or
- (ii) any building or structure (including part of a building or structure); or
- (iii) any combination of land and a building or structure, that forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand; and

b) includes anything that is in or fixed to such land.

(Historic Places Act 1993: section 2)

### ***Historic resource***

Means a historic place within the meaning of the Historic Places Act 1993; and includes any interest in a historic resource (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

### ***Icon destination***

A high-profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism, and provides memorable visitor experiences in New Zealand. . The term 'icon visitor destination' has the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy.

### ***Iconic feature***

A natural feature that New Zealanders value the most because it is nationally special and helps define who we are as New Zealanders. Iconic features are managed to ensure that they are maintained or restored.

### ***Iconic species***

A plant or animal species that New Zealanders value the most because it is nationally special and helps define who we are as New Zealanders. Iconic species are managed to ensure that their populations are maintained or restored.

### ***Indigenous species***

Plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings, vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. The words 'indigenous' and 'native' have the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy.



### ***Integrated conservation management***

The management of natural resources, and historical and cultural heritage, and existing or potential activities in a manner which ensures that priorities are clear and that the effects of each activity on others are considered and managed accordingly (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS)***

An international, non-governmental organisation of heritage professionals engaged in the conservation of places of cultural heritage value and dedicated to the conservation of the world's historic monuments and sites. ICOMOS international acts as an advisory body to the World Heritage Committee alongside the IUCN for natural heritage ([www.icomos.org.nz](http://www.icomos.org.nz); viewed September 2012).

### ***International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter, Te Pumanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki I Nga Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe***

A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation, produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The New Zealand Charter is widely used in the New Zealand heritage sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles ([www.icomos.org.nz/nzcharters.html](http://www.icomos.org.nz/nzcharters.html); viewed September 2012).

### ***International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN)***

The world's first global environmental organisation, which was founded as the International Union for the Protection of Nature (or IUPN) in 1948, following an international conference in Fontainebleau, France. The organisation changed its name to the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources in 1956 with the acronym IUCN, which remains its full legal name. It is a neutral forum for governments, non-government organisations, scientists, business and local communities to find pragmatic solutions to conservation and development challenges ([www.iucn.org/about/](http://www.iucn.org/about/) viewed September 2012).

### ***Interpretation***

Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest, increased understanding and support for conservation.

### ***Intrinsic value***

A concept which regards the subject under consideration as having value or worth in its own right independent of any value placed on it by humans (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Kaitiaki***

Guardian (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Kaitiakitanga***

The exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga. In relation to a resource, this includes the ethic of stewardship based upon the nature of the resource itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Local treasure destination***

Vehicle-accessible, front country location that provides recreation opportunities for nearby communities.

***Mahinga Kai***

The customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered (Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, section 167).

***Mana***

Prestige; authority (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Marine mammal***

A marine mammal includes:

- a) any mammal which is morphologically adapted to, or which primarily inhabits, any marine environment; and
- b) all species of seal (Pinnipedia), whale, dolphin and porpoise (Cetacea), and dugong and manatee (Sirenia); and
- c) the progeny of any marine mammal; and
- d) any part of any marine mammal.

(Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978: section 2)

***Marine reserve***

A marine area constituted as a marine reserve under the Marine Reserves Act 1971.

***Mauri***

Essential life force; the spiritual power and distinctiveness that enables each thing to exist as itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Mining***

Take, win or extract by whatever means a mineral existing in its natural state in land, or a chemical substance from that mineral, for the purpose of obtaining the mineral or chemical substance, but does not include prospecting or exploration; and 'to mine' has a corresponding meaning (Crown Minerals Act 1991: section 2).

***Motor vehicle***

A vehicle drawn or propelled by mechanical power. This includes a trailer, but does not include:

- a) A vehicle running on rails; or
- b) Repealed
- c) A trailer (other than a trailer designed solely for the carriage of goods) that is designed and used exclusively as part of the armament of the New Zealand Defence Force; or
- d) A trailer running on 1 wheel and designed exclusively as a speed-measuring device or for testing the wear of vehicle tyres; or

- e) A vehicle designed for amusement purposes and used exclusively within a place of recreation, amusement, or entertainment to which the public does not have access with motor vehicles; or
- f) A pedestrian-controlled machine; or
- g) A vehicle that the Agency has declared under section 168A is not a motor vehicle; or
- h) A mobility device.

(Land Transport Act 1998)

Note: any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes, snow mobiles, and snow groomers) taken onto public conservation land must be registered and licensed.

***Mountain bike***

A non-motorised bicycle that can be used off formed roads.

***Natural***

Existing in or produced by nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Natural character***

The qualities of an area which are the result of natural processes and taken together give it a particular recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Natural heritage management***

The natural heritage management system is an integrated and scientifically sound suite of tools to help natural heritage managers (both within and outside the Department) to make more consistent decisions and monitor their progress to national outcomes.

***Natural quiet***

Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Natural resources***

Plants and animals of all kinds, and the air, water and soil in or on which any plant or animal lives or may live, and landscape and landform, and geological features, and systems of interacting living organisms and their environment, and includes any interest in a natural resource (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

***Natural state***

Unmodified by human activity or introduced plants or animals (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy***

A government-approved national strategy (2000) providing an integrated response to New Zealand's declining indigenous biodiversity, prepared in part to meet a commitment under the Convention on Biological Diversity.

***Outcome***

A goal or end result of a conservation action or series of actions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Participation***

The contribution of effort, information and ideas towards the work of the Department (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Partnership***

The relationship between individuals or groups that is characterised by mutual cooperation and responsibility for the achievement of a specific goal (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Pest***

Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen or disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm, or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems or freshwater fisheries (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Place***

An area identified in a conservation management strategy or plan for the purposes of integrated conservation management. It may include any combination of terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas, and may be determined by a range of criteria including but not limited to: ecological districts, geological features, catchments, internal departmental, regional or district council or rohe/takiwā boundaries, land status, major recreation or tourism destinations, commonality of management considerations, unique management needs (Conservation General Policy 2005). For the purposes of the Waikato Conservation Management Strategy, the Places are the Hauraki Islands Place, Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place, Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place, Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place, Freshwater Wetlands Place, Karioi to Whareorino Place, Waitomo Place and Pureora Place.

***Power-assisted cycle***

A power-assisted cycle is a cycle that has a motor of up to 300 watts.

***Preservation***

In relation to a resource, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of its intrinsic values (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

***Priority ecosystem site***

An ecosystem identified through the natural heritage system as being one of the most effective places to work to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems are protected.

***Private accommodation***

Place to live or lodge which is not available to the general public on an open basis (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Protected areas***

Terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas that are protected primarily for the purpose of the conservation of natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, using a range of legal mechanisms that provide long-term security of tenure, status or land use purpose, either privately or publicly owned (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Protection***

In relation to a resource, means its maintenance, so far as is practicable, in its current state; but includes:

- a) its restoration to some former state; and
- b) its augmentation, enhancement or expansion.

(Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

### ***Public accommodation***

A place to live or lodge in that is open to or shared by all people (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

### ***Public conservation lands and waters***

Lands and water areas administered by the Department of Conservation for whatever purpose, including the natural and historic resources of those areas covered by this Conservation Management Strategy. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition.

### ***Ramsar Convention***

(Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat)

An intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

### ***Recreational freshwater fisheries***

Any freshwater fisheries where the fishing of sports fish and indigenous freshwater fish is lawfully carried out for recreational purposes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Regulations (for conservation areas)***

A regulation made by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, under section 48 of the Conservation Act 1987. Regulations may apply to conservation areas, whereas bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves.

### ***Related facilities***

Any structure or piece of equipment that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses and outdoor showers.

### ***Reserve***

Reserve has the meaning given to that term in the Reserves Act 1977 and includes the following reserves: recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose, local purpose (Reserves Act 1977: section 2).

### ***Restoration***

The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes, and their cultural and visual qualities; or for historic heritage, to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Road***

Means:

- a) a road that is formed and maintained for vehicle use by the public;
- b) a route that is marked by the Department for vehicle use by the public or identified in a conservation management strategy or conservation management plan for use by vehicles generally or for a particular type of vehicle (for example a bicycle) or as a vehicle parking area.

(Conservation General Policy 2005).

See also definition of four-wheel drive road.

### ***Roar period***

The primary recreational deer hunting period, from 15 March to 30 April (inclusive).

### ***Rohe***

Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Site***

A defined area within a wider place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Species***

A group of organisms that has evolved distinct common inheritable features and occupies a particular geographical range, and which is capable of interbreeding freely but not with members of other species.

### ***Sports fish***

Every species of freshwater fish that the Governor-General may declare to be sports fish for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987; examples are trout and salmon.

### ***Statement of Intent (SOI)***

A document that sets out the longer term directions for the Department. Its primary purpose is to enable Ministers, select committees, and the central and audit agencies that support them to assess the performance of departments.

### ***Tangata whenua***

Iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

### ***Taonga***

Valued resources or prized possessions held by Māori, both material and non-material. It is a broad concept that includes tangible and intangible aspects of natural and

historic resources of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu and intellectual property (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Threatened (species)***

Includes all species categorised as ‘Nationally Critical’, ‘Nationally Endangered’ or ‘Nationally Vulnerable’ under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.

***Thrill seeker***

Visitors seeking controlled risk activities as part of an exciting experience. For mountain biking this may include downhill, freestyle and dirt jumping.

***Tikanga***

Māori custom, obligations and conditions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Translocation***

Movement by human intervention of a species from place to place, usually with the intention of improving the status of the species.

***Urupā***

Burial ground.

***Utilities***

Includes (but not limited to) structures and infrastructure for telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas; roads and airstrips; and hydrological and weather stations (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Vehicle***

A contrivance equipped with wheels, tracks or revolving runners on which it moves or is moved. Includes a hovercraft, a skateboard, in-line skates and roller skates; but does not include:

- i) A perambulator or pushchair;
- ii) A shopping or sporting trundler not propelled by mechanical power;
- iii) A wheelbarrow or hand-trolley;
- iv) Repealed
- v) A pedestrian-controlled lawnmower;
- vi) A pedestrian-controlled agricultural machine not propelled by mechanical power;
- vii) An article of furniture;
- viii) A wheelchair not propelled by mechanical power;
- ix) Any other contrivance specified by the rules not to be a vehicle for the purposes of this definition;
- x) Any rail vehicle.

(Land Transport Act 1998)



***Wāhi tapu***

Place sacred to Māori in traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual or mythological sense (Historic Places Act 1993: section 2).

***Wetlands***

Permanent or intermittently wet areas, shallow water or land-water margins. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers and lake margins (Conservation General Policy 2005).

***Wild animal***

Has the meaning set out in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and includes: possums, deer, wallabies, tahr, wild goats, wild pigs, and chamois (Wild Animal Control Act 1977: section 2).

***Wildlife***

Any animal (as defined as in the Wildlife Act 1953) that is living in a wild state; and includes any such animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under the Wildlife Act 1953 or otherwise; but does not include wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (Wildlife Act 1953: section 2).







# Appendices

## **Appendix 1:**

Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents

## **Appendix 2:**

Summary of the Memorandum of Understanding between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation

## **Appendix 3:**

Key ecosystems and habitats within Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 4:**

Islands administered by the Department of Conservation in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 5:**

Priority ecosystem management sites on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy identified by the Department of Conservation through the natural heritage management system in February 2012

## **Appendix 6:**

Pests present in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 7:**

Flora and fauna present in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 8:**

Icon species in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 9:**

Marine habitats and ecosystems in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 10:**

Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 11:**

Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 12:**

Key recreation destinations in Waikato Conservancy

## **Appendix 13:**

Prescriptions for management of visitor management zones

## **Appendix 14:**

Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

## **Appendix 15:**

Prescriptions for the management of aircraft zones

## **Appendix 16:**

Private accommodation schedule

# Appendix 1

## Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents

This table is presented to meet the requirements for enabling exemptions under Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). It does not exclude the need to meet all departmental requirements for the assessment of effects or responsibilities under other legislation (e.g. Building Act, Historic Places Act). Advice from the relevant territorial authority is required to determine whether a land use consent under the RMA is required. This table does not imply that the facilities included within it will be managed in perpetuity.

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<b>Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes</b>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrade of existing tracks and roads to meet current departmental service standards using current alignment.</li> <li>Service standard upgrades of existing tracks and roads through partial or complete realignment to take advantage of better grades and terrain features, or to incorporate elements of natural or historic landscape.</li> <li>Construction of new tracks as agreed in consultation with the community.</li> <li>Improvements to any existing track as considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact, health and safety concern or visitor risk, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction of tracks and roads using cut to fill excavation, cut to waste excavation and levelling using hand tools, motorised equipment and machinery.</li> <li>Excavation of batter slopes to a maximum height of 1.5 m.</li> <li>Vegetation removal from the full width of the track corridor and discretionary removal of any vegetation beyond the track and road corridor that is considered hazardous or that may adversely impact upon track components such as batter slopes, drainage or track surface materials.</li> <li>Aggregate surfacing, including placement and compaction of local and imported materials (from</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</li> <li>Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</li> <li>Alterations to land contours and slopes during track construction and upgrade.</li> <li>Removal of vegetation from the track corridor and from immediately adjacent to the asset corridor.</li> <li>Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or</li> </ol>	<p><i>Existing tracks, roads and car parks</i></p> <p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <p><i>Tracks</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bell Track</li> <li>• Bridal Veil Falls Walk</li> <li>• Deversons Route</li> <li>• Devlins Route</li> <li>• Fort Route, Te Kauri Park</li> <li>• Four Brothers Walk</li> <li>• Hakarimata Rail Trail</li> <li>• Hakarimata Summit Track</li> <li>• Hakarimata Walkway</li> <li>• Hapuakohe Walkway—north</li> <li>• Hapuakohe Walkway—south</li> <li>• Hihikiwi Track</li> <li>• Kakepuku Track</li> <li>• Karakariki Track</li> <li>• Karamu Walkway—north</li> <li>• Karamu Walkway—south</li> <li>• Karioi Track</li> <li>• Kauri Loop Walk—Hakarimata</li> <li>• Kauri Route, Te Kauri Park</li> <li>• Link Track</li> <li>• Mahaukura Track</li> <li>• Mangakara Nature Walk</li> <li>• Mangakino Route</li> <li>• Manuka Track</li> <li>• Maungakawa Walk</li> <li>• McKenzie Route, Te Kauri Park</li> <li>• Medium Gorge Route, Te Kauri Park</li> <li>• Ngarunui Track (Bryant Track)</li> <li>• Nikau Walk</li> <li>• Oparau Route</li> <li>• Ruapane Track</li> <li>• Sheep Track, Te Kauri Park</li> <li>• Tahunui Track</li> <li>• Te Tapui Track</li> <li>• Tirohanga Track</li> <li>• Tiwarawara Route</li> <li>• Tourist Loop Track—‘Gavin O’Keefe Walk’</li> <li>• Waikuku Track, Te Kauri Park</li> <li>• Waingaro Link Track—Hakarimata</li> <li>• Wairake Track</li> <li>• Warikanui Route</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
	<p>approved weed-free sources).</p> <p>5. Use of local materials in the vicinity of the asset corridor where necessary for obtaining fill/surfacing materials.</p> <p>6. Ground works of in-ground timber steps, including formation and levelling, drainage and timber construction.</p> <p>7. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from the track surface to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>8. Re-formation and widening of roads to provide safe access for two vehicles and road stability to the required standards. Drainage improvement to prevent erosion and deterioration of the road surface and structure, and to provide safe vehicle access.</p> <p>9. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the track or road to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>in the immediate vicinity of the track or road.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water Race Track</li> <li>• Waterworks Walk</li> <li>• Whangamarino Historic Walk</li> <li>• Wharaurua Route</li> </ul> <p><i>Car parks and maintained areas</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bridal Veil Falls Carpark and Amenity Area</li> <li>• Corcoran Road Carparks—upper and lower</li> <li>• Corcoran Road Picnic Area</li> <li>• Falls Road Carpark and roatrap</li> <li>• Grey Road Carpark</li> <li>• Kakepuku Carpark and vehicle access track</li> <li>• Kaniwhaniwha Carpark and picnic areas</li> <li>• Parker Road Carpark—Hakarimata</li> <li>• Rail Trail—Picnic Area</li> <li>• Te Tapui Carpark</li> <li>• Te Toto Gorge Carpark</li> </ul> <p><i>Roads</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Swallow Lane Road</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <p><i>Tracks</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Billygoat to Hihi Trig Track</li> <li>• Billygoat Incline Railway</li> <li>• Billygoat Incline Track</li> <li>• Billygoat Landing Walk</li> <li>• Billygoat Walk</li> <li>• Booms Haulage Races</li> <li>• Booms Historical Walk</li> <li>• Booms—Orange Peel Corner Track</li> <li>• Broken Hills Battery Walk</li> <li>• Cathedral Cove Walk</li> <li>• Catleys Track</li> <li>• Cookson Kauri Walk</li> <li>• Coromandel Walkway</li> <li>• Crosbies Hut Emergency Water Track</li> <li>• Crosbies Main Range Track</li> <li>• Cuvier Access Track (Settlement Tramway)</li> <li>• Cuvier Landing Tramway</li> <li>• Cuvier Lighthouse Track</li> <li>• Cuvier Radar Station Track</li> <li>• Devcich Kauri Track</li> <li>• Edwards Lookout Walk</li> <li>• Fantail Bay Track</li> <li>• Gem of the Boom Walk</li> <li>• Golden Hills Battery Walk</li> <li>• Government Battery Track</li> <li>• Hahei Beach Walk</li> <li>• Hihi Stream to Motutapere Track</li> <li>• Hihi Trig to Kopu Hikuai Road Summit Track</li> <li>• Hihi-Kopu Hikuai / Paton Stream Junction Track</li> <li>• Horitori Pony Area</li> <li>• Hotoritori—Mountain Bike Track</li> <li>• Hydro Camp to Pinnacles Hut Track</li> <li>• Jasper Creek Walk</li> <li>• Kahikatea Walk, Kauaeranga</li> <li>• Kaipawa Trig Track</li> <li>• Karaka Track</li> <li>• Kauaeranga Nature Walk</li> <li>• Kauri Block Walk</li> <li>• Lynch Stream Tramping Track</li> </ul>

Continued on next page



Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mahurangi Island Track</li> <li>• Main Range Walk West End Collins Drive</li> <li>• Maratoto Road end to Golden Cross Track</li> <li>• Matamataharakeke Track</li> <li>• Memorial Loop Track</li> <li>• Moss Creek Track</li> <li>• Muriwai Walk</li> <li>• Murrays Walk</li> <li>• New Chums Beach Walk</li> <li>• Old Wires Track</li> <li>• Opera Point Walk</li> <li>• Opito Pā Historic Reserve Walk</li> <li>• Opoutere Beach Track</li> <li>• Outlook 76 Walk</li> <li>• Papa Aroha Walk</li> <li>• Paton Stream Dam Walk Track</li> <li>• Pauanui Beach Loop Walk</li> <li>• Pauanui Summit Walk</li> <li>• Pauanui Walk to Flat Rock</li> <li>• Pinnacles Hut to Pinnacles Track</li> <li>• Piraunui Track</li> <li>• Pohutukawa Grove Beach Walk</li> <li>• Puketui Walk Track</li> <li>• Rangihau Track</li> <li>• Red Bridge Walk</li> <li>• Rocky's Walk Track to Tinker's Gully</li> <li>• Royal Standard Tramway Track</li> <li>• Square Kauri Walk</li> <li>• Stony Bay Fishing Track</li> <li>• Stony Bay Mountain Bike Track</li> <li>• Tarawaere Dam Track</li> <li>• Taumatawahine Walk</li> <li>• Te Pare Pā Walk</li> <li>• Te Puru Track</li> <li>• Third Branch Walk—East Collins Drive</li> <li>• Tokatea (Lucas Lookout) Walk</li> <li>• Trawaere / Waterfall / Billygoat Link Track</li> <li>• Twin Kauri Track</li> <li>• Waiau Falls Walk</li> <li>• Waiau Kauri Grove Walk</li> <li>• Waiau Summit Track</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Campsite Beach Access Track</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Northern Beach Access Track</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Tsunami Track</li> <li>• Waimama Bay Walk</li> <li>• Wainora Tramping Track</li> <li>• Waiomu Kauri Grove Walk</li> <li>• Waiomu Valley Track</li> <li>• Waiotahi / Main Range Track</li> <li>• Waipaheke (motorbike) Track</li> <li>• Waitaia Track</li> <li>• Water Race Link to Third Branch Track</li> <li>• Water Race Tunnels Track</li> <li>• Webb Creek Packhorse Steps</li> <li>• Webb Creek to Hydro Camp Track</li> <li>• Wentworth Falls Walk</li> <li>• Wentworth Mines Walk</li> <li>• Whangaiterenga to Booms Track</li> <li>• Whangamata Track</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wharekirauponga Tramway</li> <li>• Wharekirauponga Walk</li> <li>• Whenuakite Kauri Loop Walk</li> <li>• Whitianga Rock Walk</li> </ul> <p><i>Car parks and maintained areas</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Booms Historical Carpark</li> <li>• Broken Hills Carpark</li> <li>• Camp Management Complex Carpark</li> <li>• Cathedral Cove Carpark</li> <li>• Coromandel Walkway Carpark—north</li> <li>• Coromandel Walkway Carpark—south</li> <li>• Hahei Beach Carpark</li> <li>• Hahei Beach Picnic Area</li> <li>• Hihi Carpark</li> <li>• Hoffmans Pool Carpark k</li> <li>• Jasper Creek Carpark—east</li> <li>• Jasper Creek Carpark—west</li> <li>• Kahikatea Picnic Area</li> <li>• Kaipawa Trig Carpark—north</li> <li>• Kaipawa Trig Track Carpark—south</li> <li>• Kauaeranga Road end Carpark</li> <li>• Maratoto Road end Carpark</li> <li>• Muriwai Walk Carpark—Port Jackson</li> <li>• Murrays Walk Carpark</li> <li>• Nature Walk Carpark</li> <li>• Opera Point Carpark</li> <li>• Otama Beach Amenity Area</li> <li>• Outlook 76 Carpark</li> <li>• Papa Aroha Carpark</li> <li>• Piraunui Carpark</li> <li>• Pohutukawa Grove Beach Carpark</li> <li>• Puketui Road Carpark (off Kopu Hikuai Road)</li> <li>• Puketui Valley Road end Carpark</li> <li>• Quarry Road Carpark</li> <li>• Square Kauri Walk Carpark</li> <li>• Tarawaere Carpark</li> <li>• Tinkers Gully Carpark</li> <li>• Tokatea Lookout Carpark</li> <li>• Twin Kauri Amenity Area</li> <li>• Waiau Falls Carpark</li> <li>• Waiau Kauri Grove Carpark</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Refuse Transfer Carpark</li> <li>• Waikawau Beach Access Carpark—west</li> <li>• Waikawau Beach Boatramp Carpark</li> <li>• Wentworth Picnic Area</li> <li>• Wentworth Picnic Area Carpark</li> <li>• Wentworth Road end Carpark k</li> <li>• Whenuakite Kauri Loop Walk Carpark</li> <li>• Wires Road Carpark</li> </ul> <p><i>Roads</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Broken Hills Road</li> <li>• Hotoritori Road</li> <li>• Kauaeranga Road</li> <li>• Maratoto (four-wheel drive) Loop Road /Track</li> <li>• Maratoto Four-wheel Drive Road</li> <li>• Maratoto Road</li> <li>• Port Jackson Road</li> <li>• Rolling Road</li> <li>• Stony Bay Road</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Waikawau Bay Campsite Internal Road</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Road</li> <li>• Waiotahi Road</li> <li>• Wentworth Campsite Ford</li> <li>• Wentworth Valley Road</li> <li>• Wires Road</li> <li><b>Maniapoto Area:</b></li> <li><i>Tracks</i></li> <li>• Angel's Rest Track</li> <li>• Arataki Swingbridge/Track</li> <li>• Bog Inn Hut Track</li> <li>• Bog Inn Track</li> <li>• Buried Forest Walk, Pureora</li> <li>• Centre North Island Track</li> <li>• Crawler Tractor Track</li> <li>• Forest Tower Walk, Pureora</li> <li>• Grand Canyon Track</li> <li>• Hauhungaroa Track</li> <li>• Keepa Road</li> <li>• Ketemaringi Track</li> <li>• Kihi Track</li> <li>• Mangakahu Road/Track</li> <li>• Mangaotaki Track</li> <li>• Mangapohue Track</li> <li>• Mangatutu Track, Okahukura</li> <li>• Mapara Track</li> <li>• Marokopa Falls Track</li> <li>• Mt Pureora to Bog Inn Hut Track</li> <li>• Mt Pureora Track</li> <li>• Mt Titiraupenga to Arataki Road Track</li> <li>• No. 10 and No. 11 Tramway Track</li> <li>• Okahukura Road Eastern Section</li> <li>• Okahukura Road Western Section</li> <li>• Omaru Falls Track</li> <li>• Opapaka Pā Pasture Walk</li> <li>• Opapaka Pā Track</li> <li>• Pikiariki Tractor Hauler Track</li> <li>• Piripiri Walk</li> <li>• Rimu Track, Pureora</li> <li>• Ruakuri Bushwalk</li> <li>• South Block Quad Track, Mapara</li> <li>• Tawarau Track</li> <li>• Te Araroa Walkway over Department of Conservation administered land</li> <li>• Te Raumauku Track</li> <li>• Timber Trail</li> <li>• Titiraupenga Road</li> <li>• Toi Toi Track, Pureora</li> <li>• Tolley Road Hunters Access</li> <li>• Totara Walk, Pureora</li> <li>• Waihaha Hut Track</li> <li>• Waihaha Track</li> <li>• Waihora Lagoon Track</li> <li>• Waihora Stream Road—west</li> <li>• Waihora/Hauhungaroa Track</li> <li>• Waikoura Campsite to Top of the World (No. 9)</li> <li>• Waione Tram Track</li> <li>• Waipapa—south</li> <li>• Waipapa Loop Track</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Waipapa–north</li> <li>• Waitanguru Track</li> <li>• Waitomo Forest Access Easement</li> <li>• Waitomo Walkway</li> <li>• Whareorino Track</li> <li><i>Car parks and maintained areas</i></li> <li>• Aratoro Carpark</li> <li>• Forest Tower Carpark</li> <li>• Link Road Carpark</li> <li>• Mangaotaki Carpark</li> <li>• Mangapohue Track Carpark</li> <li>• Marokopa Falls Carpark / Picnic Area</li> <li>• Omaru Falls Carpark</li> <li>• Opapaka Pā Carpark</li> <li>• Pureora Cabin's Carpark</li> <li>• Pureora Office Carpark</li> <li>• Ruakuri Carpark</li> <li>• Waihora Lagoon Carpark</li> <li>• Waitanguru Track Carpark</li> <li><i>Roads</i></li> <li>• Appletree Road</li> <li>• Arohena Internal Campsite Road</li> <li>• Barryville Road</li> <li>• Bismarck Road (Forest Tower Road)</li> <li>• Bog Inn Road</li> <li>• Cabbage Tree Road</li> <li>• Drum Bridge Road</li> <li>• Endeans Road</li> <li>• Fletchers Road</li> <li>• Gully Road</li> <li>• Hoddle Road</li> <li>• Kaka Road</li> <li>• Ketemaringi Road</li> <li>• Kotukutuku Road</li> <li>• Link Road East</li> <li>• Link Road West / Waimiha Road</li> <li>• Manganui Road</li> <li>• Maramataha Road</li> <li>• Matakana Road</li> <li>• Mine Road</li> <li>• Moerangi Road</li> <li>• Ngaherenga Internal Campsite Road</li> <li>• Ngaroma Recreation Four-wheel Drive Forest Road</li> <li>• Okahukura Road</li> <li>• Okauaka Ford</li> <li>• Okauaka Road</li> <li>• Ongarue Ford</li> <li>• Otamaroa Road</li> <li>• Owawenga Road</li> <li>• Panhandle Road</li> <li>• Perham Avenue</li> <li>• Pikiariki Road</li> <li>• Piropiro Road (Kokomiko)</li> <li>• Plains Road</li> <li>• Pureora Forest Access Road (Waihora)</li> <li>• Pureora Village Back Road</li> <li>• Quarry Road</li> <li>• Ruakuri Access Road</li> <li>• Scott Road</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select Loop Road / Mountain Bike Track</li> <li>• Swamp Road</li> <li>• Te Rauamoa Road</li> <li>• Tihoi Road</li> <li>• Titiraupenga Road West</li> <li>• Toi Toi Road</li> <li>• Totara Stream Road</li> <li>• Waimahora Road</li> <li>• Waimonoa Road</li> <li>• Waipapa Reserve Road</li> <li>• Waitaramoa Road</li> <li>• YMCA Road</li> </ul> <p><b>Proposed future developments</b></p> <p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extend Hakarimata Rail Trail to train wreck</li> <li>• Develop historic coastal walk within Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve</li> <li>• Build new 20-bunk hut on Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Provide a viewpoint and visitor access to eastern Whangamarino</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expand Cathedral Cove Car Park</li> <li>• Upgrade walking track at Cathedral Cove</li> <li>• Upgrade Rocky's Walk</li> <li>• Upgrade Wharekirauponga Track</li> </ul> <p><b>Maniapoto Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop a car park and toilet at Tui Road</li> <li>• Connect Timber Trail to Hauhungaroa Track</li> <li>• Extend Hauhungaroa Track to meet SH41 to provide improved Te Araroa route</li> <li>• Upgrade final stage of Link and Barryville Road</li> <li>• Upgrade and re-route Mangapuhoe Walk</li> <li>• Extend and upgrade Marakopa Falls Track to waterfall</li> <li>• Upgrade Centre North Island Track to wheelchair standard</li> </ul>
<b>Structures* and buildings for visitor purposes</b>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Upgrade of existing structures and buildings to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements are met, such as minimum access widths and safety barrier heights as specified within SNZ 8630:2004.</li> <li>2. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar structures and buildings built on the same footprint or within the immediate</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of structure and building footprints, and excavation of piles and footings.</li> <li>2. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/treatment.</li> <li>3. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</li> <li>2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage</li> </ol>	<p><b>Existing structures and buildings</b></p> <p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bridal Veil Falls Toilets</li> <li>• Corcoran Road Helipad</li> <li>• Corcoran Road toilet</li> <li>• Grey Road—Carpark Shelter</li> <li>• Grey Road—Toilets</li> <li>• Hakarimata Summit Helipad</li> <li>• Kakepuku Toilet</li> <li>• Kaniwhaniwha Campsite—toilet block</li> <li>• Kaniwhaniwha Carpark—toilet</li> <li>• Karioi Helipad</li> <li>• Mahaukura Helipad</li> <li>• New Hut toilets, platform and staircase</li> <li>• Pahautea Hut</li> <li>• Pahautea Hut campers' shelter</li> <li>• Pahautea Hut Helipad</li> <li>• Pahautea Hut tool shed</li> <li>• Parker Road Carpark Toilet</li> <li>• Rail Trail toilet—single</li> <li>• Rail Trail toilet—wheelchair</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>vicinity) replacement of existing structures and buildings as they reach the end of their projected/economic life.</p> <p>3. Construction of new structures and buildings required to meet service standards for existing tracks, roads, amenity areas and campsites.</p> <p>4. Construction of new structures and buildings as a component of development work for new tracks, roads, amenity areas and campsites.</p> <p>5. Improvements to any existing structure and building considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact and health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>from structure and building footprint to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs.</p> <p>4. Construction of structures and buildings such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, viewing platforms, huts, shelters, toilets, signage and ladders in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 for the relevant visitor group.</p> <p>5. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the structure or building to ensure that their integrity is not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>sumps.</p> <p>3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during structure and building construction.</p> <p>4. Removal of vegetation from structure and building footprint and immediate surroundings.</p> <p>5. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas.</p> <p>6. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, and aesthetic impact on historic landscapes.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Structures including swingbridges, footbridges, glulam bridges, pole bridges, suspension bridges, vehicle bridges, boardwalks, barriers, handrails, steps, staircases, toilets, shower units, shelters, kiosks, viewing platforms, viewing towers, sheds, offices, stiles, access ramps, gates, culverts, helicopter landing pads, access ladders, access chains, water tanks, water tank stands, retaining walls and bollards associated with all existing and proposed tracks, roads and car parks</li> <li>• Swan's—Norski toilet</li> <li>• Waikuku Track—Campsite toilet</li> <li>• Wairēnga—Interpretation Shelter</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cathedral Cove Beach toilet</li> <li>• Coromandel Walkway pit toilet</li> <li>• Crosbies Hut</li> <li>• Fletcher Bay backpackers accommodation</li> <li>• Fletcher Bay—Modcom office</li> <li>• Fletcher Bay—Portacom accommodation</li> <li>• Hunters House—Kauaeranga Valley</li> <li>• Kauaeranga Visitor Centre 24-hour toilet</li> <li>• Kauaeranga Volunteer House</li> <li>• Maratoto House</li> <li>• Pinnacles Hut</li> <li>• Poley Bay Musterer's Hut</li> <li>• Port Jackson Bach</li> <li>• Port Jackson Campsite Office/Workshop</li> <li>• Port Jackson—cooking shelter</li> <li>• Port Jackson—Warden's accommodation</li> <li>• Stony Bay Bach</li> <li>• Stony Bay Campsite Office</li> <li>• Stony Bay Campsite Rubbish Transfer Station</li> <li>• Stony Bay Campsite toilet 1</li> <li>• Stony Bay House</li> <li>• Stony Bay sealed vault toilet 2</li> <li>• Structures including swingbridges, footbridges, glulam bridges, pole bridges, suspension bridges, vehicle bridges, boardwalks, barriers, handrails, steps, staircases, toilets, shower units, shelters, kiosks, viewing platforms, viewing towers, sheds, offices, stiles, access ramps, gates, culverts, helicopter landing pads, access ladders, access chains, water tanks, water tank stands, retaining walls and bollards associated with all existing and proposed tracks, roads and car parks</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Campsite Management Complex 3 Bay Shed</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Campsite Management Office</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Campsite Manager's House</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Lodge</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Old School House</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay—Knox Cottage</li> </ul> <p><b>Maniapoto Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bog Inn Hut (historic place)</li> <li>• Hauhungaroa Hut</li> <li>• Kakaho Campsite jetty</li> <li>• Leitch's Hut</li> <li>• Mangatutu Hut</li> <li>• Quarry (Waimonoa)</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Structures including swingbridges, footbridges, glulam bridges, pole bridges, suspension bridges, vehicle bridges, boardwalks, barriers, handrails, steps, staircases, toilets, shower units, shelters, kiosks, viewing platforms, viewing towers, sheds, offices, stiles, access ramps, gates, culverts, helicopter landing pads, access ladders, access chains, water tanks, water tank stands, retaining walls and bollards associated with all existing and proposed tracks, roads and car parks</li> <li>• Waihaha Hut</li> <li>• Wildlife Hut</li> </ul> <p><i>Proposed structures and buildings</i></p> <p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Build 20-bunk Pahautea Hut</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Build a commercial hub building at Cathedral Cove Carpark</li> </ul> <p><b>Maniapoto Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Build an Accommodation Lodge at Piropiro Campsite</li> <li>• Build a visitor centre at Pureora Village</li> </ul>
<b>Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes</b>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Upgrade of existing campsites and amenities to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements for sites and amenity areas are met, as specified within SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard.</li> <li>2. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar campsites and amenities built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing campsite and amenity assets as they reach the end of their projected/ economic life.</li> <li>3. Construction of new campsites and amenities required to meet service standards for existing</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of campsite and amenity footprint, and excavation of piles and footings.</li> <li>2. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/ treatment, including effluent dispersal fields and in-ground waste tanks.</li> <li>3. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from building and structural campsite and amenity footprint to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</li> <li>2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. Fill materials not normally found on the site (e.g. scoria) may be imported.</li> <li>3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during campsite and amenity construction.</li> <li>4. Removal of vegetation from the asset footprint and</li> </ol>	<p><i>Existing campsites and amenities</i></p> <p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Central Clearing Campsite—Bell Track</li> <li>• Kaniwhaniwha Campsite</li> <li>• Pahautea Hut tent pads</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Billygoat Basin Backcountry Campsite</li> <li>• Billygoat Basin tent pads</li> <li>• Booms Flat Campsite</li> <li>• Broken Hills Campsite</li> <li>• Catleys Campsite</li> <li>• Crosbies Hut Backcountry Campsite</li> <li>• Fantail Bay Campsite</li> <li>• Fletcher Bay Campsite</li> <li>• Hahei Beach Picnic Area</li> <li>• Hotoritori Campsite</li> <li>• Kahikatea Picnic Area</li> <li>• Kahikatea Powered Campsite</li> <li>• Moss Creek Campsite</li> <li>• Otama Beach Amenity Area</li> <li>• Pinnacles Campsite</li> <li>• Port Jackson Campsite</li> <li>• Shag Stream Campsite</li> <li>• Stony Bay Campsite</li> <li>• Totara Flat Campsite</li> <li>• Trestle View Campsite</li> <li>• Twin Kauri Amenity Area</li> <li>• Waikawau Bay Campsite</li> <li>• Wainora Campsite</li> <li>• Wentworth Campsite</li> <li>• Wentworth Picnic Area</li> <li>• Whangaiterenga Campsite</li> </ul> <p><b>Maniapoto Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aratoro Amenity Area</li> <li>• Arohena Campsite</li> </ul>



Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>campsites and amenity areas.</p> <p>4. Construction of new assets such as structures and buildings as a component of development work for new campsites and amenity areas.</p> <p>5. Improvements to any existing asset or establishment of new assets considered necessary to manage, meet regulatory requirements, and mitigate any environmental impact or health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs.</p> <p>4. Construction of campsites and amenities such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, shelters, toilets, showers, signage and ladders, in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard for the visitor group.</p> <p>5. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the campsite or amenity to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>from immediately around the campsite and amenity.</p> <p>5. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas.</p> <p>6. Noise from increased usage of campsite and amenity sites.</p> <p>7. Increased water take for operation of campsite and amenities.</p> <p>8. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the campsite or amenity.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kakaho Campsite</li> <li>• Mangaotaki Amenity Area</li> <li>• Mangapahoe Picnic Area</li> <li>• Ngaherenga Campsite</li> <li>• Ngaherenga West Campsite</li> <li>• Opapaka Pā Amenity Area</li> <li>• Oparure Hall lawn</li> <li>• Piripiri Picnic Area</li> <li>• Piropiro Campsite</li> <li>• Pureora Protest Site (historic place)</li> <li>• Ruakuri Amenity Area</li> <li>• Ruakuri Upper Picnic Area</li> <li>• Waitanguru Amenity Area</li> </ul> <p><b>Proposed future developments</b></p> <p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nil</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrade campsites at: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Booms Flat</li> <li>2. Catleys</li> <li>3. Fantail Bay</li> <li>4. Fletcher Bay</li> <li>5. Hotoritori</li> <li>6. Stony Bay</li> <li>7. Shag Stream</li> <li>8. Totara Flat</li> <li>9. Trestle View</li> <li>10. Wainora</li> <li>11. Whangaiterenga</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Provide restricted freedom camping sites at: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Cathedral Cove Carpark (new)</li> <li>2. Goat Bay (Moehau)</li> <li>3. Quarry Road Carpark (Wharekirauponga)</li> <li>4. McDonalds Recreation Reserve (North Waiaro Bay, Colville)</li> <li>5. Opito Bay Reserve</li> <li>6. Otama Recreation Reserve (eastern end)</li> <li>7. Papamaire Island (Whangamata North)</li> <li>8. Sandy Bay Recreation Reserve</li> <li>9. Maratoto Road Carpark</li> <li>10. Waikawau Recreation Reserve (Thames Coast)</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Provide powered campervan sites at: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Cathedral Cove Carpark</li> <li>2. Kauaeranga Valley adjacent to Visitors Centre</li> <li>3. Waikawau Bay Campsite</li> </ol> </li> </ul> <p><b>Maniapoto Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrade Ngahaerenga Campsite</li> <li>• Provide powered campervan site adjacent to Pureora cabins</li> </ul>
<b>Historic assets—remedial work and maintenance</b>			
<p>1. Maintenance of historic places to departmental service standards, and ICOMOS and NZHPT standards and guidelines.</p> <p>2. Stabilisation of condition of</p>	<p>1. Vegetation management around historic places, maintenance of drainage channels, and management of safety issues</p>	<p>1. Minor soil disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</p> <p>2. Surface water runoff,</p>	<p><b>Waikato Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aotea Heads Scientific Reserve</li> <li>• Kakepuku Mountain Historic Reserve</li> <li>• Meremere Pā Site Historic Reserve</li> <li>• Puraho Historic Reserve</li> <li>• Taniwha Pā Historic Reserve</li> </ul> <p><b>Hauraki Area:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Broken Hills mines</li> </ul>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
historic assets by conservation treatments and land stabilising, e.g. construction of retaining walls.	including barrier construction. 2. Repairs and conservation treatments as scheduled to concrete, masonry, metal, timber and earthwork structures. 3. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the historic asset to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.	including modification of existing natural watercourses and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. 3. Removal of vegetation from assets and immediate vicinity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Christmas Creek Kauri Dam</li> <li>• Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse settlement</li> <li>• Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) radar station structures</li> <li>• Dancing Creek Kauri Dam</li> <li>• Lillis Battery</li> <li>• Opera Point Historic Reserve</li> <li>• Opito Point Historic Reserve</li> <li>• Royal Standard Tramway</li> <li>• Te Pare Point Historic Reserve</li> <li>• Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve</li> </ul> <b>Maniapoto Area:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ongarue Tramway</li> <li>• Opapaka Pā</li> <li>• Pureora—crawler tractor</li> <li>• Pureora—log hauler</li> <li>• Pureora—timber workers' house and store</li> <li>• Ruakuri historic kiosk</li> </ul>
<b>Signs</b>			
1. Erection of signage on public conservation land for the purpose of providing information and interpretation to the public. 2. Erection of signage on public conservation land for the purpose of informing people about fire lighting restrictions.	1. Works associated with the erection of signage.	1. Aesthetic impact from man-made structures in natural areas. 2. Removal of vegetation from sign footprint and vicinity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All public conservation land within Waikato Conservancy</li> <li>• Other land within 1 km of public conservation land for fire purposes or where permission has been given by the landowner</li> </ul>
<b>Biodiversity tracks, roads and structures (including staff accommodation)</b>			
1. Refer to 'Activity scope' for 'Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'.	1. Refer to 'Management actions' for 'Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'.  NB: Not all visitor standards noted above will apply to biodiversity tracks, roads and	1. Refer to 'Environmental impacts' for 'Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All public conservation land in Waikato Conservancy where conservation management programmes are being undertaken.</li> </ul>

Continued

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
	structures (including staff accommodation). In some cases a lesser standard may apply.		
<b>Other management-related activities</b>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Erection of fences on public conservation land and its boundaries.</li> <li>2. Habitat enhancement.</li> <li>3. Pest control and/or eradication.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Vegetation removal to provide clear lines for fences.</li> <li>2. Some animal pest operations (note: discharge permits will be required for operations utilising pesticides).</li> <li>3. Earthworks and vegetation clearance associated with habitat enhancement, i.e. pond/drain creation or re-alignment.</li> <li>4. General access required to undertake the activity.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Vegetation removal.</li> <li>2. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil.</li> <li>3. Death and likely eradication of target mammalian pests; possible death of non-target species.</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All public conservation land in Waikato Conservancy where conservation management programmes are being undertaken</li> </ul>
<b>Hazardous goods</b>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Use, transportation, storage and disposal of hazardous substances.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Storage, transportation and application of hazardous substances including, but not limited to, flammable liquids, pesticides and herbicides.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Will comply with all relevant legislative requirements.</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All public conservation land in the Waikato Conservancy where conservation programmes are being undertaken</li> </ul>

\* Structures for visitor purposes include viewing platforms, steps/stairs, boardwalks, bridges, handrails, safety fences, stiles, signage, etc.

# Appendix 2

## Summary of the Memorandum of Understanding between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation

### Parties

The Pouakani Governance Entity (Pouakani)  
The Minister of Conservation (the Department)

### Purpose

To enable both Pouakani and the Department to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost cooperation. The Memorandum sets out a framework that will enable the Department and Pouakani to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship.

### Areas covered

The areas covered by the Memorandum of Understanding are those parts of the Pureora Forest Park within the claim area (including the land administered by the Department on Mt Titiraupenga), the Pouakani Scenic Reserve and the land owned by the two Trusts that is covered in native bush on Mt Titiraupenga (MOU Land). Both Pouakani and the Department recognise that the Māori-owned blocks remain private land and that Crown land remains Crown land.

### General

The existence of the Memorandum of Understanding, including a summary of the terms of signing of the Memorandum, will be noted in conservation management strategies and plans affecting the MOU Land.

### Specific obligations

In recognition of the importance to Pouakani of the land covered by this Memorandum, Pouakani will be consulted and regard will be had to its views concerning the following management and administration activities that may be undertaken from time to time by the Department:

- The preparation of conservation management strategies and conservation management plans and
- The preparation of non-statutory plans, strategies or programmes for the protection and management of the land (including the protection of indigenous species and the control of introduced species).

In addition:

- The Department will provide Pouakani with relevant information to enable Pouakani to consider and advise its views to the Department on any matter on which it is consulted
- The Department will inform Pouakani of all concession applications to the MOU Land and
- Pouakani will inform and consult the Department in relation to any programmes Pouakani conduct to protect indigenous species and to control introduced species

The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Pouakani on a continuing basis.

Pouakani and the Department want to ensure that there are ongoing discussions on how to better harmonise management objectives for both Māori-owned land and land that the Department administers.

The Department will respect the great significance of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance as taonga to Pouakani, and will endeavour to protect them in its statutory role to conserve historic resources in protected areas.

In respect of cultural materials, the Department will:

- Consider requests from Pouakani for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the relevant legislation
- Agree, where reasonably practicable, for Pouakani to have access to cultural materials that become available as a result of departmental operations
- Consult with Pouakani in circumstances where there are competing requests for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes
- Assist Pouakani with the planting of traditional plants on private land to reduce the need for plants to be gathered from land administered by the Department
- Develop procedures with Pouakani for monitoring sustainable levels and methods of use

In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department will endeavour to recognise the importance to Pouakani of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

The Department will work with Pouakani at the area office level to encourage respect for Pouakani values.

# Appendix 3

## Key ecosystems and habitats within Waikato Conservancy

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Communities of temperature inversion basins	<p>Nationally significant and rare frost-mediated successions in forest clearings at several locations within Pureora Forest Park. Threatened and at risk flora present.</p>	Pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land.	Plant and animal pest control.
Dune vegetation	<p>Nationally rare examples of dune systems on the Waikato West Coast and at several locations on the Coromandel East coast. Threatened species present.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals. Incursions of invasive species. Human impacts from recreational use (vehicles, trampling) and coastal development.</p>	Public conservation land and land administered by local territorial authorities.	<p>Plant and animal pest control. Advocacy, education and consultation with local stakeholders. Revegetation at some locations. Biosecurity monitoring and response management.</p>
Forest of cold climates	<p>Nationally significant examples of cool forest types are present in large areas of Pureora Forest Park and Pirongia Forest Park. Supports a range of threatened and at risk species.</p>	Pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land and land administered by local territorial authorities.	Plant and animal pest control.

Continued on next page

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<b>Forest of mild climates</b> Kahikatea ( <i>Dacrydium</i> forest <i>dacrydoides</i> ) Tōwai ( <i>Weinmannia silvicola</i> ), rātā ( <i>Metrosideros robusta</i> ), montane podocarp forest Black beech ( <i>Nothofagus solandri</i> ) forest Tawa ( <i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i> ), <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest Tōtara ( <i>Podocarpus totara</i> ), mataī, kahikatea forest	The diversity of mild forest types is well represented by nationally significant examples on the Coromandel Peninsula, in Pureora Forest Park, on volcanic cones in the Waikato and King Country, and in the lowland alluvial plains of the Waikato Basin. Forest types support a range of threatened and at risk species. Kahikatea forest is nationally rare and underrepresented.	Pest plants and animals. Incursions of invasive species. Modification of natural hydrological regimes (relevant to kahikatea forests).	Public conservation land, land administered by local territorial authorities and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further modification of hydrological regimes. Biosecurity monitoring and response management.
<b>Forest of warm climates</b> Kauri ( <i>Agathis australis</i> ) forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, beech ( <i>Nothofagus</i> spp.) forest Tawa, kohekohe ( <i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i> ), mangeao ( <i>Litsea calicaris</i> ) broadleaved, podocarp forest Kāmahi, tawa, podocarp and beech forest	The diversity of warm forest types is well represented by nationally significant examples on Coromandel offshore islands, the Coromandel Peninsula, Pureora Forest Park, volcanic cones in the Waikato and King Country, and lowland alluvial plains of the Waikato Basin. Includes Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve, which is designated as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention. Forest types support a large range	Pest plants and animals. Incursions of invasive species. Modification of natural processes, including natural hydrological regimes (relevant to kahikatea forests). PTA (kauri dieback disease; <i>Phytophthora</i> taxon <i>Agathis</i> ).	Public conservation land and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further modification of natural processes. Biosecurity monitoring and response management. PTA (kauri dieback disease) advocacy, monitoring and hygiene protocols.



Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<p>Pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest</p> <p>Kahikatea, pukatea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) forest</p>	<p>of threatened and at risk species, including several endemic species. Several sites represent the southernmost extent of some species and forest types (forests with kauri). Offshore islands support particularly high levels of threatened and at risk biodiversity.</p>			
<p><b>Lakes</b></p> <p>Windform Riverine Swamp</p>	<p>Includes nationally significant Waikato peat lakes and west coast dune lakes. Several lakes support significant populations of aquatic and avifauna wildlife and native macrophyte flora (in particular Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)).</p>	<p>Pest plants and fish. Incursions of invasive species. Modification of natural catchment development and land use (primarily effects of agriculture resulting in eutrophication and sedimentation).</p>	<p>Public conservation land, land administered by local territorial authorities and private land.</p>	<p>Plant and fish pest control or eradication where feasible. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further adverse effects of catchment development and land use. Revegetation of riparian zones at some locations.</p>
<p><b>Rivers</b></p> <p>River</p>	<p>The Waikato River and its tributaries is the largest river system in New Zealand.</p>	<p>Pest plants and fish. Effects of catchment development and land use (primarily effects of agriculture resulting in eutrophication and sedimentation).</p>	<p>Public conservation land, land administered by local territorial authorities and private land.</p>	<p>Plant pest control where feasible. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further adverse effects of catchment development and land use. Collaboration with River Accord partners to progress river management.</p>
<p><b>Saline communities</b></p> <p>Searush (<i>Juncus maritimus</i>), oioi (<i>Leptocarpus similis</i>), glasswort (<i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i>) and sea</p>	<p>Waikawau Beach represents a nationally significant example of this ecosystem type.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals.</p>	<p>Public conservation land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control.</p>

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<p>primrose (<i>Samolus repens</i>) rushland/herbfield</p> <p><b>Wetlands</b></p> <p>Oioi restiad rushland/reedland</p> <p><i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</p> <p>Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>), tangle fern (<i>Gleichenia discarpa</i>) scrub/fermland</p> <p>Ephemeral wetland herbfield</p> <p>Lakeshore turf herbfield</p> <p>Flaxland</p> <p>Raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) reedland</p> <p>Manuka, wire rush (<i>Empodisma minus</i>) restiad rushland</p> <p><i>Coprosma</i>, <i>Olearia</i> scrub</p> <p>Bamboo rush (<i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i>), wire rush restiad rushland</p>	<p>The diversity of wetlands is well represented by nationally significant examples on the Coromandel Peninsula, in the Waikato alluvial lowlands and on the west coast of the King Country. Includes Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve and Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve, both of which are designated as wetlands of international importance under the Ramsar Convention. The wetland types support a large range of threatened and at risk species. Includes endemic flora and fauna and nationally significant populations of some species.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals. Effects of catchment development and land use (primarily effects of agriculture resulting in eutrophication and sedimentation). Modification of hydrological regime by water abstraction, drainage and flood control schemes.</p>	<p>Public conservation land and private land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control or eradication where feasible. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further adverse effects of catchment development and land use, and of adverse changes to hydrological regimes. Revegetation of riparian zones at some locations.</p>
<p><b>Coastal cliff communities</b></p>	<p>Represented by the coastal areas of northern Coromandel Peninsula (Moehau) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island). Supports iconic flora species.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals.</p>	<p>Public conservation land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control.</p>

Ecosystem/habitat type	Karst communities	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
	Karst	The Maniapoto Karst region represents nationally significant karst features and supports threatened and at risk species.	Pest plants and animals. Effects from catchment development and land use. Human-induced impacts from recreational use and tourism operations.	Public conservation land and private land.	Plant and animal pest control. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise effects from catchment development and land use. Advocacy, monitoring and compliance of recreational use and concessionaires.

## Appendix 4

### Islands administered by the Department of Conservation in Waikato Conservancy

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)	Mammalian pests	Issues
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration	Absent	Ongoing ecological restoration is appropriate (primarily weed control and biosecurity). Suitable controlled concession activities (e.g. nature tourism) may be appropriate within 10 years. Future translocations of out of range species may occur. Maintain controlled access to protect biodiversity values.
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)—lighthouse site	Protected (other) land	Ecosystem Restoration	Absent	Historic features are significant and require maintenance. 'Ecosystem Restoration' classification due to significant ecological values and restoration objectives.
Double Island (Moturehu)—Mercury Islands	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā ( <i>Motuweta isolata</i> ) present—endemic to Mercury group.
Red Mercury Island (Whakau)—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Kawhitu or Stanley Island—Mercury Islands	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.

Continued on next page

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)*	Mammalian pests	Issues
Green Island—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact	Absent	Nationally significant, high biodiversity values and highly fragile environment. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Atiu or Middle Island—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact	Absent	Nationally significant, high biodiversity values and highly fragile environment. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Korapuki Island—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)—excluding Hongiora Island	Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate.
Hongiora Island—Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu)	Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact	Absent	Nationally significant, high biodiversity values and highly fragile environment. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate.
Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)	Recreation Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Absent	Potential island showcase site. Maintain as animal pest free as threatened species present. Maintain recreation opportunities and open access. Promote and provide interpretation for conservation issues. Allow commercial and recreation opportunities (nature tourism).

Continued on next page

Continued

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)	Mammalian pests	Issues
Motutapere Island	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Absent	Maintain as animal pest free, with community involvement. Potential for fauna introductions. Maintain recreation opportunities and open access.
Rabbit Island	Stewardship Area (Government Purpose Reserve)	Open Sanctuary	Absent (Unconfirmed)	Unrestricted access, low ecological priority.
Waikato River islands	Wildlife Management Reserve	N/A	Present	Highly modified, unrestricted access, low ecological priority.
Ohinewai Island– Waikato River	Stewardship Area (Conservation Area)	N/A	Present	Highly modified, unrestricted access, low ecological priority.

\* The island classification is aligned with the 10-year term of this CMS and represents the desired future state of the island (Department of Conservation 2010: The island strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation). The island classification is intended for guidance only, and needs to be read in conjunction with the outcome and policies for Places in Part Two of this strategy.

## Appendix 5

### Priority ecosystem management sites on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato Conservancy identified by the Department through the natural heritage management system in February 2012

This list has been taken from the Department's national list of 941 ecosystem management units, which represent the full range of New Zealand's terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems (except for sites on private land, which are not listed).

Name of ecosystem management unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Nature Reserve/ Wildlife Sanctuary	112.9
Aotea Harbour Dunes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spinifex (<i>Spinifex</i> spp.), pīngao (<i>Demoschoenus spiralis</i>) grassland/sedgeland</li> <li>• Oioi (<i>Apodasmia similis</i>), knobby clubrush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>) sedgeland</li> <li>• Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>) or kānuka (<i>Kunzea ericoides</i>) scrub</li> </ul>	Scientific Reserve	506.3
Awaroa Swamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), mataī (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>), kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>) forest</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	95.7
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Pōhutukawa treeland/rockland</li> <li>• Bare rock</li> </ul>	Nature Reserve	171.2
Hakarimata Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>), kohekohe (<i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i>), mangeao (<i>Litsea calicaris</i>) broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Mānuka or kānuka scrub</li> <li>• Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>), podocarp, broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Scenic Reserve	1807.8
Horseshoe Bay	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)/ Recreation Reserve/ Scenic Reserve	771.8
Horsham Downs Lake Group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Swamp</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)/ Wildlife Refuge Reserve	50.8
Hot Water Beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland</li> <li>• Oioi, knobby clubrush sedgeland</li> </ul>	Recreation Reserve	22.2

Continued on next page



Name of ecosystem management unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Kapowai-Kauaeranga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Broadleaved scrub and shrubland</li> <li>Mānuka or kānuka scrub</li> <li>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</li> <li>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, beech (<i>Nothofagus</i> spp.) forest</li> <li>Tōwai (<i>Weinmannia silvicola</i>), rātā (<i>Metrosideros robusta</i>), montane podocarp forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	3396.9
Karioi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</li> <li>Hall's tōtara (<i>Podocarpus cunninghamii</i>), pāhautea (<i>Libocedrus bidwillii</i>), kāmahi (<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>) forest</li> <li>Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest</li> <li>Mānuka or kānuka scrub</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	1718.1
Kopuatai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mānuka, wire rush (<i>Empodisma minus</i>) restiad rushland</li> <li>Bamboo rush (<i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i>), wire rush restiad rushland</li> <li>Mānuka, tangle fern (<i>Gleichenia dicarpa</i>) scrub/fernland</li> <li>Flaxland</li> <li><i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</li> <li>Kahikatea, pukatea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) forest</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wetland Management Reserve) / Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	10 557.5
Lake Koraha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flaxland</li> </ul>	Conservation Area (Hauturu West)	1.1
Lake Ohinewai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>River</li> </ul>	Conservation Area	17.1
Lake Rotokawau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Swamp</li> </ul>	Conservation Area	14.8
Lake Rotomanuka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Coprosma</i>, <i>Olearia</i> scrub</li> <li>Swamp</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	36.6
Lake Rotongaroiti / Lake Rotongaro	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>River</li> <li>Lakeshore turf; herbfield</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	485.9
Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) reedland</li> <li><i>Coprosma</i>, <i>Olearia</i> scrub</li> <li>Swamp</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	31.6
Mercury Islands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Scenic Reserve/ Nature Reserve/ Wildlife Sanctuary	388.9
Moanatuatua	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bamboo rush, wire rush restiad rushland</li> </ul>	Scientific Reserve	114.9
Moehau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park) / Recreation Reserve	5526.8

Continued on next page

Continued

Name of ecosystem management unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Mānuka or kānuka scrub</li> <li>• Tōwai, rātā, montane podocarp forest</li> <li>• Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Pōhutukawa treeland/rockland</li> </ul>		
Otahu Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Mānuka or kānuka scrub</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	655.8
Otama Beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland</li> <li>• Flaxland</li> </ul>	Recreation Reserve	46.7
Papa Aroha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Area	874.1
Papaki Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</li> <li>• Tōwai, rātā, montane podocarp forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Area / Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	7612.8
Pikiariki	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest</li> <li>• Mānuka or kānuka scrub</li> <li>• Broadleaved scrub and shrubland</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	926.9
Pirongia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</li> <li>• Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pirongia Forest Park)	7832.1
Pureora Mountain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest</li> <li>• Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest</li> <li>• <i>Olearia</i>, <i>Pseudopanax</i>, <i>Dracophyllum</i> scrub</li> <li>• <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	5077.8
Ratanunui Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	945.9
Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</li> </ul>	Scenic Reserve	1021.3
Upper Maramataha Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</li> <li>• Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest</li> <li>• Mataī, Hall's tōtara, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	3979.0

Continued on next page

Continued

Name of ecosystem management unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Waihaha Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mataī, Hall's tōtara, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest</li> <li>• Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest</li> <li>• Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• Broadleaved scrub and shrubland</li> <li>• Monoao (<i>Dracophyllum subulatum</i>) scrub/lichenfield</li> <li>• <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</li> <li>• Ephemeral wetland, herbfield</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	13 060.8
Waikawau Beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland</li> <li>• Oioi, knobby clubrush sedgeland</li> </ul>	Recreation Reserve	70.2
Waipapa Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</li> <li>• Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest</li> <li>• Mānuka or kāmahi scrub</li> <li>• Broadleaved scrub and shrubland</li> <li>• <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</li> <li>• Monoao scrub/lichenfield</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	4520.2
Whangamarino	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mānuka, wire rush restiad rushland</li> <li>• Mānuka, tangle fern scrub/fernland</li> </ul>	Government Purpose Reserve (Wetland Management Reserve)	5151.9
Whangau Stream	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monoao scrub/lichenfield</li> <li>• Red tussockland (<i>Chionochloa rubra</i>)</li> </ul>	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	201.0
Whareorino	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</li> <li>• Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest</li> <li>• Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest</li> <li>• Mānuka or kāmahi scrub</li> <li>• River</li> </ul>	Conservation Area	15 676.9
Whewells Bush	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kahikatea forest</li> </ul>	Scientific Reserve	11.5

# Appendix 6

## Pests present in Waikato Conservancy

Table A6.1. Animal pests.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
<b>Birds</b>				
Rainbow lorikeet <i>Trichoglossus haematodus</i>	Widespread in captivity	Potential exclusion competition with native nectivorous birds	None	Based on ecosystem management priorities
<b>Freshwater fish (excluding recreational game fish species)</b>				
Brown bullhead catfish <i>Ameiurus nebulosus</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
European carp/koi <i>Cyprinus carpio</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Gambusia <i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Grass carp <i>Ctenopharyngodon idella</i>	Lower Waikato River and some lakes	Habitat disturbance; destroy native macrophytes and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Goldfish <i>Carassius auratus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Perch <i>Perca fluviatilis</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Rudd <i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Habitat disturbance; destroy native macrophytes; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Tench <i>Tinca tinca</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
<b>Invertebrates</b>				
Argentine ant <i>Linepithema humile</i>	Most towns and coastline	Ecosystem disruption; competitive exclusion and predation of native invertebrates	Biosecurity for islands	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua),

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
				Motutapere Island, Rabbit Island, Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)
Asian paper wasp <i>Polistes chinensis</i>	Lowland of North Island and northern South Island	Prey on insects and can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
Australian paper wasp <i>Polistes humilis</i>	Northern North Island	Prey on insects and can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
Common wasp <i>Vespula vulgaris</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Competitive exclusion and predation of native invertebrates; can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
German wasp <i>Vespula germanica</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Competitive exclusion and predation of native invertebrates; can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
Steatoda <i>Steatoda capensis</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Competitive exclusion of katipō ( <i>Latrodectus katipo</i> )	None	Coastal dunelands
<b>Mammals</b>				
Brushtail possum <i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Obligate herbivore; capable of eliminating some species; opportunistic predator of native vertebrates and invertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Cat <i>Felis catus</i>	Occurs widely, but largely excluded from intact forest	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates; capable of killing all native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Fallow deer <i>Dama dama</i>	Occurs widely, but absent from the Coromandel Peninsula	Herbivore, impacting on ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Ferret <i>Mustela furo</i>	Occurs widely, but largely excluded from intact forest	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates; capable of killing all native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Goat <i>Capra hircus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Herbivore, impacting on ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Hare <i>Lepus europaeus</i>	Occurs widely, but at low densities and largely excluded from intact forest	Herbivore, impacting ground cover	None	None
Hedgehog <i>Erinaceus europaeus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Predominantly insectivorous, but opportunistic predation on vertebrates, especially ground-nesting birds	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Mouse <i>Mus musculus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Seed and invertebrate predator; capable of killing larger animals	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), Motutapere Island, Rabbit Island, Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)
Norway rat <i>Rattus norvegicus</i>	Occurs widely, but localised	Seed and invertebrate predator; opportunistic predator of native vertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Pig <i>Sus scrofa</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Omnivore or obligate herbivore; largely feeding on vegetation, fruit and seeds, but also opportunistic predator of native vertebrates and invertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Rabbit <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Occurs widely, but largely excluded from intact forest	Herbivore, impacting ground cover; particular impact on coastal dune systems in the Waikato	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Red deer <i>Cervus elaphus</i>	Occurs widely, but absent from the Coromandel Peninsula	Herbivore, impacting ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Ship rat <i>Rattus rattus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Seed and invertebrate predator; opportunistic predator of native vertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Sika deer <i>Cervus nippon</i>	Localised to illegal release site at Port Waikato	Herbivore, impacting ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Exclude from Conservancy and maintain free of this species	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Stoat <i>Mustela erminea</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Predator of small vertebrates and	Site-based response due to	Based on ecosystem and

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
	islands	invertebrates; capable of killing most native species	wide distribution	species management priorities
Weasel <i>Mustela nivalis</i>	Occurs widely, but localised	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
<b>Reptiles</b>				
Rainbow skink <i>Lampropholis delicata</i>	Coastal	Competitive exclusion of native reptiles	Biosecurity for islands	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), Motutapere Island, Rabbit Island, Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)
Red-eared slider turtle <i>Trachemys scripta elegans</i>	Very localised and restricted to lowland water-ways mostly of the upper North Island	Prey on freshwater invertebrates and fish	None	None
<b>Amphibians</b>				
Green and golden bell frog <i>Litoria aurea</i>	Lowland of northern North Island	Disease vector	None	None
Southern bell frog <i>Litoria raniformis</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Disease vector	None	None
Whistling frog <i>Litoria ewingii</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Disease vector	None	None

Table A6.2. Pest plants.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
African club moss <i>Selaginella kraussiana</i>	Widespread	Forms impenetrable ground cover suppressing regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Along walking tracks throughout the Conservancy
Agave/century plant <i>Agave americana</i>	Localised in the Coromandel	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands and coastal areas

Continued on next page

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Alligator weed <i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	Lower Waikato River and associated wetlands, and some terrestrial sites around Hamilton	On water forms extensive mats, which restrict water flow and aggravate flooding; on land out-competes and displaces native plants	Contain existing sites and prevent establishment on public conservation land	Whangamarino Wetland and other wetlands, rivers and lakes
Aluminium plant <i>Lamium galeobdolon</i>	Localised	Smothers and displaces native understorey species; inhibits native regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shady places in scrub, forest margins and modified forests
Arum lily <i>Zantedeschia aethiopica</i>	Widespread	Smothers and displaces native understorey species; inhibits native regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, rivers and lakes
Banana passionfruit <i>Passiflora tripartita</i> and <i>P. mixta</i>	Widespread	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Blackberry <i>Rubus fruticosus</i> agg.	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Boneseed <i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i> subsp. <i>monilifera</i>	Localised in the Coromandel and Raglan	Shades out seedlings and has the potential to replace low coastal, open and island vegetation	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands and coastal areas
Boxthorn <i>Lycium ferrocissimum</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and coastal areas
Broom <i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Widespread	Competes with native plants; alters soil condition by raising nitrogen levels; seeds are poisonous	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shrubland, tussockland, cliff, bluff and riverbed communities
Brush wattle <i>Paraserianthes lophantha</i>	Widespread	Colonises open areas, overtopping natives and changing native species habitat	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands



Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Buddleia <i>Buddleja davidii</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants and impacts on native regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Forest margins, regenerating areas, waste spaces, river beds, plantation forests
Cathedral bells <i>Cobaea scandens</i>	Isolated populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and waterways
Chilean flame creeper <i>Tropaeolum speciosum</i>	Pureora	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Chilean rhubarb <i>Gunnera tinctoria</i> and <i>G. manicata</i>	Common in cultivation but rare in the wild in this Conservancy	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Prevent establishment on public conservation land	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Climbing asparagus <i>Asparagus scandens</i>	Widespread	Smothers and displaces native plants; can also ring bark trees	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Climbing spindleberry <i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>	Southern Waikato Conservancy	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Cotoneaster species <i>Cotoneaster</i> spp.	Widespread	Replaces native species by forming dense thickets that shade them out	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Crack willow <i>Salix fragilis</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Dally pine/African scurf pea <i>Psoralea pinnata</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands

Continued on next page

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Darwin's barberry <i>Berberis darwini</i>	Pureora	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Douglas fir <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub, forest margins, shrublands and tussocklands; wind-dispersed seeds need unvegetated ground to germinate
Elaeagnus <i>Elaeagnus</i> × <i>reflexa</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub forest margin
English ivy <i>Hedera helix</i>	Localised	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub, forest margins, modified forests and riverbeds
Gum tree <i>Eucalyptus</i> species	Widespread	Out-competes native trees with fast growth; reduces soil moisture levels	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites; avoid trees if they provide bat roosting habitat	Indigenous forests and shrublands
German ivy <i>Delairea odorata</i>	Localised	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub, forest margins, modified forests and riverbeds
Gorse <i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Widespread	Competes with native plants; alters soil condition by raising nitrogen levels; however, can protect regrowth of native woody species and dies back as native regeneration proceeds	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites; consider option of natural succession into native shrub and forest	Areas with low-stature vegetation (e.g. grasslands) or sites of high natural disturbance (e.g. riverbeds)
Grey willow <i>Salix cinerea</i>	Waikato-wide	Out-competes and displaces native plants; dense stands can cause blockages, flooding and structural change to waterways, leading to erosion and increased sedimentation	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Heath <i>Erica cinerea</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Low stature shrub and tussock communities
Heather <i>Calluna vulgaris</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Montane to alpine habitats of low to moderate fertility, e.g. Whenuakura Plains
Himalayan fairy grass <i>Miscanthus nepalensis</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Holly <i>Ilex aquifolium</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Moist, low elevation forests.
Japanese knotweed and giant knotweed <i>Fallopia japonica</i> and <i>F. sachalinensis</i>	South Waikato and south Coromandel	Forms monocultural stands preventing native regeneration, particularly in wetlands	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Japanese walnut <i>Juglans ailantifolia</i>	Widespread in southern Waikato	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration; structurally alters waterways	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Jasmine <i>Jasminum polyanthum</i>	Widespread	Forms impenetrable ground cover; smothers native vegetation to mid-canopy level; alters forest composition and suppresses regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and dunelands
Kahili ginger <i>Hedychium gardnerianum</i>	Te Kauri, Kawhia reserves	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Lodgepole pine <i>Pinus contorta</i>	Pureora	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Eradicate from public conservation land	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Lupin <i>Lupinus arboreus</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Madeira or mignonette vine <i>Anredera cordifolia</i>	Sporadic	Out-competes and smothers native plants in low forest, waterways and coastal areas	Prevent establishment on public conservation land	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Manchurian wild rice <i>Zizania latifolia</i>	Waterways in northeastern areas of the Waikato	Forms dense colonies in swampy areas, displacing other species and blocking water flow	Prevent establishment on public conservation land	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Marram grass <i>Ammophila arenaria</i>	Widespread in all coastal dunelands	A sand-binder and dune builder that typically builds taller, denser dunes due to its leaf structure, which allows it to trap sand more efficiently than the native pīngao ( <i>Demoschoenus spiralis</i> ), which it outcompetes for resources	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands
Mexican daisy <i>Erigeron kavinskianus</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and karst
Mexican devil <i>Ageratina adenophora</i>	Localised populations	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Mist flower <i>Ageratina riparia</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Moth plant <i>Araujia sericifera</i>	Localised populations	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites; eradicate from Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Needle bush <i>Hakea sericea</i>	Localised populations in the Coromandel and on islands	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites.	The Coromandel and islands
Old man's beard <i>Clematis vitalba</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Eradicate from public conservation land	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Pampas grass and cultivars <i>Cortaderia jubata</i> and <i>C. selloana</i>	Widespread	Very invasive, forming dense, impenetrable stands that inhibit regeneration of native plants	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Indigenous forests, shrublands, karst, dunelands and islands
Privet (tree and Chinese) <i>Ligustrum lucidum</i> and <i>L. sinense</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Forest margins, scrub, open forests and modified forests
Red cestrum <i>Cestrum elegans</i> and <i>C. fasciculatum</i>	Isolated populations	Plant is poisonous and can kill cattle	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Roadsides, old homestead sites, scrub and forest margins
Reed sweet grass and reed canary grass <i>Glyceria maxima</i> and <i>Phalaris arundinacea</i>	Sporadic	Forms dense stands within wetlands and damp areas, replacing other species; chokes streams, increasing flooding	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Royal fern <i>Osmunda regalis</i>	Localised populations	Displaces native vegetation, particularly in wetlands	Contain existing sites and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Saltwater paspalum <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Estuaries and harbours
Spartina <i>Spartina</i> spp.	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Estuaries and harbours: Aotea, Kawhia, Coromandel, Firth of Thames
Strawberry dogwood <i>Cornus capitata</i>	Widespread in Maniapoto	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Forest margins, scrub, open or modified forests and waste places
Tradescantia/ wandering Jew <i>Tradescantia fluminensis</i>	Widespread	Forms impenetrable ground cover; smothers native vegetation and suppresses regeneration; regrowth from very small pieces of plant make removal difficult while it is easily spread	Contain existing sites and prevent spread into new sites	Places from where it is likely to spread by its profound vegetative regrowth (e.g. public places, rivers); habitat—forests, scrub, cliffs, bluffs and riverbeds
Tutsan <i>Hypericum androsaemum</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Forest margins, scrub, open or modified forests and waste places; poor pasture in

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
				high rainfall areas; unpalatable to stock but not poisonous
Woolly nightshade <i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Yellow flag iris <i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Lower Waikato River, north Waikato lakes including Whangamarino	Displaces native vegetation, particularly in wetlands	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes

Table A6.3. Aquatic pest plants.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Alligator weed <i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	Localised populations	Restricts water flow; high growth rate; rapid spread; may affect whitebait breeding; toxic to livestock; resistant to selective herbicides	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Warm, shallow, enriched, fresh to slightly brackish water of drains, swamps, ponds, lagoons, stream banks, dune hollows, flood-prone pasture, cropland, waste land and lawns
Bladderwort <i>Utricularia gibba</i>	Widespread in northern half of the North Island at low altitude	Rapid spread; forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Most freshwater habitats
Cape pondweed <i>Aponogeton distachyus</i>	Widespread	Forms dense mats of floating leaves; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shallow, still or slow-flowing fresh water of farm dams, drains, streams and lakes
Curled pondweed <i>Potamogeton crispus</i>	Widespread	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Sediments of nutrient-rich lakes, ponds, drains, rivers and streams in clear water at a depth of up to 10 m
Egeria <i>Egeria densa</i>	Widespread	Rapid spread; forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Still, shallow, enriched water in dams, ponds, drains, streams, rivers and lakes at a depth of up to 5 m

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Elodea <i>Elodea canadensis</i>	Widespread	Rapid spread; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Clear water of water races, drains, slow-flowing or still freshwater, on fertile, silty sediments
Lagarosiphon <i>Lagarosiphon major</i>	Widespread	Rapid spread; forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Clear, still or slow-flowing, low-fertility freshwater ponds, lakes, streams and rivers
Mexican water lily <i>Nymphaea mexicana</i>	Localised populations	Forms dense mats of floating leaves; clogs waterways; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Ponds, small lakes, muddy substrates at a depth of up to 2 m
Parrot's feather <i>Myriophyllum aquaticum</i>	Localised populations	Forms dense floating mats that clog waterways	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shallow fresh water of peaty or organically rich swamps and drains, lake margins and slow-flowing water
Primrose willow <i>Ludwigia peploides</i>	Widespread	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Mainly still and slow-flowing, shallow water
Reed sweet grass <i>Glyceria maxima</i>	Widespread	Forms dense stands; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands and adjacent rivers and lakes
Saltwater paspalum <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>	Common in east and west coast harbours	Forms dense mats on tidal flats; invades and changes the composition and structure of native ecosystems; can reduce or exclude feeding and roosting for birds; may alter fish spawning and feeding sites; can change estuarine hydrology by accumulating sediment	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Margins of tidal flats, sandy or gravel beaches, adjacent pasture and coastal dunes
Spartina/cord grass <i>Spartina anglica</i>	Common along coast	Forms dense masses; loss of natural habitat for wading birds and fish spawning; impacts on recreational and cultural fisheries and seafood sources; can cause navigation problems	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Estuarine habitat

Continued on next page

Continued

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Water buttercup <i>Ranunculus trichophyllus</i>	Widespread	Forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Lakes, ponds, streams, rivers and drains
Water celery <i>Apium nodiflorum</i>	Widespread	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Slow-flowing water, shallow ponds, drains, swamps and stream edges
Water lily <i>Nymphaea alba</i>	Localised populations	Forms dense mats of floating leaves; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Still or slow-flowing shallow freshwater in ponds, lakes and tarns at depths of around 1.5 m
Yellow flag <i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Common along lower Waikato and Avon Rivers	Poisonous to humans and livestock; rhizomes form dense mats of floating leaves; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Ditches, wet ground and water bodies



# Appendix 7

## Flora and fauna present in Waikato Conservancy

Several thousand indigenous species are present in Waikato Conservancy. This Appendix lists a selection of these, i.e. vascular plants, vertebrate animals and other fauna of note that are currently classified as 'threatened' or 'at risk'.

### Threatened/at risk species

Table A7.1. Flora (vascular plants)

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Christella Swamp helmet orchid "Corybas Kaitarakihi" (orchid) Hairy willowherb Small flowered hypericum Stalked adder's tongue fern  Tainui, New Zealand hazel New Zealand fireweed Yellow bladderwort	<i>Christella dentata</i> s.l. <i>Corybas carsei</i> <i>Corybas</i> aff. <i>rivularis</i> (AK 251833; Kaitarakihi) <i>Epilobium hirtigerum</i> <i>Hypericum minutiflorum</i> <i>Ophioglossum petiolatum</i> <i>Phylloglossum drummondii</i> <i>Pomaderris apetala</i> subsp. <i>Maritime</i> <i>Senecio scaberulus</i> <i>Utricularia australis</i>
Nationally Endangered	Sneezeweed, "centipeda" Coastal cress Bog clubmoss New Zealand forget-me-not Native oxtongue Tauhinu Swamp greenhood orchid Carses schoenus Bastard grass, hook sedge	<i>Centipeda minima</i> subsp. <i>minima</i> <i>Lepidium flexicaule</i> <i>Lycopodiella serpentina</i> <i>Myosotis petiolata</i> var. <i>pansa</i> <i>Picris burbridgeae</i> <i>Pomaderris phyllicifolia</i> subsp. <i>phyllicifolia</i> <i>Pterostylis micromega</i> <i>Schoenus carsei</i> <i>Uncinia strictissima</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Water brome Gossamer grass Curly sedge Pua o Te Reinga, dactylanthus, wood rose  Napuka, tītīrangi Isolepis Dwarf musk, swamp musk, matt-leaved mazus Nau, Cook's scurvy grass  Mikoikoi, New Zealand iris Pimelea Turners kōhūhū, tent pole tree Dwarf greenhood Plumed greenhood Matangaoa, New Zealand water cress Spiranthes, lady's tresses	<i>Amphibromus fluitans</i> <i>Anemanthele lessoniana</i> <i>Carex cirrhosa</i> <i>Dactylanthus taylorii</i>  <i>Dichelachne micrantha</i> <i>Gratiola concinna</i> <i>Hebe speciosa</i> <i>Isolepis fluitans</i> var. <i>fluitans</i> <i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>impolitus</i>  <i>Lepidium oleraceum</i> <i>Lepilaena bilocularis</i> <i>Libertia peregrinans</i> <i>Pimelea tomentosa</i> <i>Pittosporum turneri</i> <i>Pterostylis puberula</i> <i>Pterostylis tasmanicum</i> <i>Rorippa divaricata</i> <i>Spiranthes novae-zelandiae</i>

Continued on next page

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Kohurangi, Kirk's daisy	<i>Brachyglottis kirkii</i> var. <i>kirkii</i>
	Sea sedge	<i>Carex litorosa</i>
		<i>Cyclosorus interruptus</i>
	Tufted hair-grass, wavy hair-grass	<i>Deschampsia cespitosa</i>
	Waiū-atua, shore spurge, sea spurge, sand milkweed	<i>Euphorbia glauca</i>
	Rāwiri, mānuka-rauriki	<i>Kunzea ericoides</i> var. <i>linearis</i>
	Leptinella	<i>Leptinella tenella</i>
	Dwarf musk	<i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>novaezeelandiae</i>
	Leafless māhoe	<i>Melicytus flexuosus</i>
	Stout water milfoil	<i>Myriophyllum robustum</i>
	Scrobic, native paspalum	<i>Paspalum orbiculare</i>
	Sickle fern, Australian cliff brake	<i>Pellaea falcata</i>
	Pikirangi, piritā, roeroe, pirinoa, red mistletoe	<i>Peraxilla tetrapetala</i>
	Autetaranga, toroheke, sand daphne, sand pimelea	<i>Pimelea villosa</i>
	Kirk's kōhūhū, thick-leaved kohukohu	<i>Pittosporum kirkii</i>
	Hinarepe, sand tussock	<i>Poa billardierei</i>
	Swamp greenhood	<i>Pterostylis paludosa</i>
King fern, para, tawhiti para, king fern, horseshoe fern	<i>Ptisana salicina</i>	
Koheriki	<i>Scandia rosifolia</i>	
Teuclidium	<i>Teuclidium parvifolium</i>	
Tāpia, piritā, white mistletoe, tupia	<i>Tupeia antarctica</i>	
Recovering	Nil	
Relict	William's broom, giant-flowered broom	<i>Carmichaelia williamsii</i>
	Pīngao, pikao, golden sand sedge	<i>Ficinia spiralis</i>
	Swamp leek orchid	<i>Prasophyllum hectorii</i>
	Māwhai	<i>Sicyos mawhai</i>
	Pūhā, shore pūhā, New Zealand sow thistle	<i>Sonchus kirkii</i>
	Bamboo rush, giant wire rush	<i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i>
	Tūrepo, large-leaved milk tree	<i>Streblus banksii</i>
Bladderwort	<i>Utricularia delicatula</i>	
Naturally Uncommon	Cave spleenwort	<i>Asplenium cimmericorum</i>
	Fern	<i>Blechnum norfolkianum</i>
	Pātōtara, parsley fern	<i>Botrychium australe</i>
		<i>Brachyglottis myrianthos</i>
	Orchid	<i>Bulbophyllum tuberculatum</i>
		<i>Caladenia atradenia</i>
	Bearded orchid	<i>Calochilus paludosus</i>
	Red bearded orchid	<i>Calochilus robertsonii</i>
	Small-flowered white bindweed	<i>Calystegia marginata</i>
	Adams daisy	<i>Celmisia adamsii</i> s.s.
	Crassula	<i>Crassula ruamahanga</i>
	Pinaki, New Zealand carrot, native carrot	<i>Daucus glochidiatus</i>
	Mokimoki, mukimuki	<i>Doodia mollis</i>
	Fern	<i>Doodia squarrosa</i>
	Great Barrier inaka	<i>Dracophyllum patens</i>
	Little spotted moa	<i>Drymoanthus flavus</i>
Sinclair's tamingi	<i>Epacris sinclairii</i>	
Fimbristylis	<i>Fimbristylis velata</i>	

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Creeping fuchsia, climbing or trailing fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia procumbens</i>
	Red leek orchid	<i>Genoplesium nudum</i>
	Yellow gumland leek orchid	<i>Genoplesium pumilum</i>
	Central North Island gentian, forest gentian	<i>Gentianella chathamica</i> subsp. <i>nemorosa</i>
	Rawlings strap-fern	<i>Grammitis rawlingsii</i>
	Monoao	<i>Halocarpus kirkii</i>
	Awaroa koromiko	<i>Hebe scopulorum</i>
	Filmy fern	<i>Hymenophyllum atrovirens</i>
	Filmy fern	<i>Hymenophyllum</i> aff. <i>flexuosum</i> (AK 177370; Mount Burnett)
	Isolepis	<i>Isolepis crassiuscula</i>
	Dwarf mistletoe, leafless mistletoe	<i>Korthalsella salicornioides</i>
		<i>Lagenifera lanata</i>
	Kawaka, kaikawaka, New Zealand cedar	<i>Libocedrus plumosa</i>
	Lindsaea fern	<i>Lindsaea viridis</i>
	Native musk, Māori musk, native monkey flower	<i>Mimulus repens</i>
	New Zealand forget-me-not	<i>Myosotis spathulata</i>
	Tree daisy	<i>Olearia angulata</i>
	Pittosporum	<i>Pittosporum ellipticum</i>
	Pittosporum	<i>Pittosporum virgatum</i>
	Bristle fern	<i>Polyphlebium colensoi</i>
	Pale-flowered kūmarahou	<i>Pomaderris hamiltonii</i>
	Pomaderris	<i>Pomaderris rugosa</i>
	Grass-leaved orchid "sphagnum"	<i>Pterostylis</i> aff. <i>graminea</i> (CHR 513330; "sphagnum")
	Fan fern	<i>Schizaea dichotoma</i>
	New Zealand fireweed	<i>Senecio marotiri</i>
	New Zealand fireweed	<i>Senecio repangae</i> subsp. <i>repangae</i>
	New Zealand chickweed "Poor Knights"	<i>Stellaria</i> aff. <i>parviflora</i> (AK 169580; Poor Knights)
	Fennel-leaved pondweed, sago pondweed	<i>Stuckenia pectinata</i>
	Kōkihi, tūtae-ikamoana, New Zealand spinach	<i>Tetragonia tetragonoides</i>
	Spotted sun orchid "New Zealand"	<i>Thelymitra</i> aff. <i>ixioides</i> (AK 251348; New Zealand)
	Domed sun orchid	<i>Thelymitra tholiformis</i>
	Thismia	<i>Thismia rodwayi</i>
Coloniser		<i>Sicyos australis</i> s.s.

Table A7.2. Fauna (vertebrates).

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Bryde's whale	<i>Balaenoptera edeni/Balaenoptera brydei</i>
	Maui's dolphin	<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori maui</i>
Nationally Endangered	Matuku-hūrepo, bittern	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>
	Tarāpunga, black-billed gull	<i>Larus bulleri</i>
	Hihi, stitchbird	<i>Notiomystis cincta</i>
	Whitaker's skink	<i>Oligosoma whitakeri</i>
	Terehu, bottlenose dolphin	<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>

Continued on next page

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Vulnerable	Ngutuparore, wrybill	<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i>
	Brown kiwi	<i>Apteryx mantelli</i>
	North Island kōkako	<i>Callaeas wilsoni</i>
	Pekapeka, long-tailed bat (North Island)	<i>Chalinolobus tuberculata</i> (North Island)
	Pohowera, banded dotterel	<i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i>
	Tūturiwhatu, northern New Zealand dotterel	<i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i>
	Mātukutuku, reef heron	<i>Egretta sacra sacra</i>
	Kāeaea, bush falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i> "bush"
	Taranui, Caspian tern	<i>Hydroprogne caspia</i>
	Whio, blue duck	<i>Hymenolaimus malachorhynchus</i>
	Tarāpunga, red-billed gull	<i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>
	Archey's frog	<i>Leiopelma archeyi</i>
	North Island kākā	<i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i>
Kāruhiruhi, pied shag	<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>	
Weweia, New Zealand dabchick	<i>Poliiocephalus rufopectus</i>	
At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Tītītipounamu, North Island rifleman	<i>Acanthisitta chloris granti</i>
	Tuna, longfin eel	<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>
	Pīhoiho, New Zealand pipit	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>
	Mātātā, North Island fernbird	<i>Bowdleria punctata vealeae</i>
	Panoko, torrentfish	<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>
	Kororā, northern blue penguin	<i>Eudyptula minor iredalei</i>
	Giant kōkopu	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>
	Kōaro	<i>Galaxias brevipinnis</i>
	Inanga	<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>
	Shortjaw kōkopu	<i>Galaxias postvectis</i>
	Korokoro, lamprey	<i>Geotria australis</i>
	Bluegill bully	<i>Gobiomorphus hubbsi</i>
	Redfin bully	<i>Gobiomorphus huttoni</i>
	Tōrea, New Zealand pied oystercatcher	<i>Haematopus finschi</i>
	Poaka, pied stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus</i>
	Peketua, Hochstetter's frog	<i>Leiopelma hochstetteri</i>
	Pekapeka, central short-tailed bat	<i>Mystacina tuberculata rhyacobia</i>
	Auckland green gecko	<i>Naultinus elegans elegans</i>
	Speckled skink	<i>Oligosoma infrapunctatum</i>
	Toanui, flesh-footed shearwater	<i>Puffinus carneipes</i>
Tara, white-fronted tern	<i>Sterna striata striata</i>	
Recovering	Pāteke, brown teal	<i>Anas chlorotis</i> "North Island"
	Little spotted kiwi	<i>Apteryx owenii</i>
	Tōrea pango, variable oystercatcher	<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>
	Robust skink	<i>Oligosoma alani</i>
	Tieke, North Island saddleback	<i>Philesturnus rufusater</i>
	Pycroft's petrel	<i>Pterodroma pycrofti</i>
North Island little shearwater	<i>Puffinus assimilis haurakiensis</i>	
Relict	Kākāriki, red-crowned parakeet	<i>Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae novaezelandiae</i>
	Duvaucel's gecko	<i>Hoplodactylus duvaucelii</i>
	Pacific gecko	<i>Hoplodactylus pacificus</i>
	Black mudfish	<i>Neochanna diversus</i>
	Moko skink	<i>Oligosoma moco</i>
	Marbled skink	<i>Oligosoma oliveri</i>
	Egg-laying skink	<i>Oligosoma suteri</i>
Pakahā, fluttering shearwater	<i>Puffinus gavia</i>	

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Koitareke, marsh crake Pūweto, spotless crake Tuatara	<i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i> <i>Porzana tabuensis plumbea</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Koekoeā, long-tailed cuckoo Katatai, banded rail Kawau, black shag Kawau paka, little shag Kawau tūi, little black shag	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i> <i>Gallirallus philippensis assimilis</i> <i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae</i> <i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i> <i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i>
Data Deficient	Coromandel striped gecko	<i>Hoplodactylus</i> aff. <i>stephensi</i> "Coromandel"

Table A7.3. Other fauna of note.

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Endangered	Moehau stag beetle	<i>Geodorcus alsobius</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Moth	<i>Gracillariidae</i> n. " <i>Teucrium</i> "
At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Red katipō spider New Zealand bat fly Caddisfly Snail	<i>Latrodectus katipo</i> <i>Mystacinobia zelandica</i> <i>Oxyethira kirikiriroa</i> <i>Potamopyrgus troglodytes</i>
Recovering	Pāteke/brown teal louse Mahonui giant wētā Mercury Islands tusked wētā	<i>Anaticola</i> sp. <i>Deinacrida mahoenui</i> <i>Motuweta isolata</i>
Relict	Te Aroha stag beetle Moth	<i>Geodorcus auriculatus</i> <i>Houdinia flexilissima</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Moehau wētā Cuvier Island tree wētā	<i>Hemiandrus</i> "Moehau" <i>Hemideina thoracica</i>

# Appendix 8

## Icon species in Waikato Conservancy

	Common name	Scientific name
Flora	Kauri Rimu Pōhutukawa Kōwhai Ferns	<i>Agathis australis</i> <i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i> <i>Metrosideros excelsa</i> <i>Sophora</i> spp. Various species
Fauna	Kiwi Tūī Tuatara	<i>Apteryx</i> spp. <i>Prothemadera novaeseelandiae</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i>

# Appendix 9

## Marine habitats and ecosystems in Waikato Conservancy

The Coastal Classification and Mapping Scheme depth zones are as follows: shallow—0–30 m; deep—30–200 m; upper slope—200–500 m; mid-slope—500–1000 m; lower slope—1000–4000 m.

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
<b>Northeastern bioregion (Miranda to Waihi):</b>				
Inner Hauraki Gulf and the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana	Saltmarsh Mānawa/ mangroves ( <i>Avicennia marina</i> ) Sheltered beach Sheltered rocky shore Tidal sand and mudflat Shallow mud High-current mud Sheltered shallow reef High-current shallow reef High-current shallow gravel Dog cockle ( <i>Glycymeris glycymeris</i> ) (biogenic) Water column	The Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana extensive tidal flats make it an internationally important feeding area for wading birds, with up to 25 000 birds, most of which are migratory, using these at any time. It is listed as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention, and is one of New Zealand's three most important wading bird habitats.  Colville Bay also provides important wading bird habitat (Site of Special Wildlife Interest).  Productive benthic and pelagic ecosystem providing primary nursery habitat for at least 15 coastal fish species.  Foraging area for little shearwaters ( <i>Puffinus assimilis</i> ), aihe/common dolphins ( <i>Delphinus delphis</i> ), kera wēra/killer whales ( <i>Orcinus orca</i> ) and Bryde's whales ( <i>Balaenoptera edeni/brydei</i> ).	Sea level rise and mānawa/mangrove expansion potentially threaten wading bird habitat.  Stock grazing impacts on saltmarshes.  Suspended sediments, excess nutrients and other contaminants in terrestrial runoff.  Benthic communities have been extensively modified by historic trawling and shellfish dredging (e.g. loss of productivity and ecosystem services provided by natural mussel beds).  Aquaculture (benthic effects, loss of pelagic habitat).  Trampling of intertidal organisms in high-use areas.  Overfishing.  Invasive marine species.  Underwater noise pollution. Ship strike (threatens the resident Bryde's whale population). Toxic algal blooms.	Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention—this 8927-ha site lies within the Coastal Marine Area, with jurisdiction vested in Land Information New Zealand (LINZ), Waikato Regional Council and the Department of Conservation.

Continued on next page

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Manaia Harbour	Sheltered rocky shore Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Tidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass ( <i>Zostera</i> spp.) Sheltered shallow sand and mud	Predominantly natural system with intact coastal vegetation sequences.  Tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel ( <i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i> ) habitat on the shell beach and spit.  Habitat for wading and coastal birds.  Habitat for diadromous fishes (notably shortjaw kōkopu ( <i>Galaxias postvectis</i> ) and tuna/longfin eel ( <i>Anguilla dieffenbachia</i> )).  Relatively diverse estuarine fish fauna.	Invasive species (spartina ( <i>Spartina</i> spp.), Pacific oyster ( <i>Crassostrea gigas</i> )).  Coastal development, including aquaculture.	
Coromandel Harbour	Sheltered rocky shore Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Tidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand and mud Estuarine reef Sheltered shallow sand and mud	Important wading and coastal bird habitat.  Ecologically important estuarine vegetation—particularly the intact coastal vegetation sequence on the south side of Preece Point.  Benthic communities are poorly known.	Infilling due to catchment clearance and development.  Habitat loss due to coastal development, including aquaculture, and invasive species (e.g. spartina, Pacific oyster).	
Eastern Coromandel (Cape Colville - Waihi)	Moderate rocky shore Sheltered rocky shore Sheltered beach Moderate beach Sheltered shallow sand Moderate shallow sand Rhodoliths (biogenic) Subtidal karepō/seagrass (biogenic)	High natural character values.  Productive commercial, customary and recreational fisheries.  High recreational and tourism use.  Diverse and productive coastal rocky reef assemblages dominated by extensive beds of large brown algae.	Inputs of fine sediments resulting from catchment clearance and coastal development.  Overfishing resulting in trophic cascade effects, and bycatch and entanglement of protected and threatened marine life in fishing gear.	Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve—representative examples of moderate rocky shore, sheltered and moderate shallow reef, shallow sand, and some sponge garden (biogenic) habitats.



Continued

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
	Sheltered shallow reef Moderate shallow reef High-current deep sand High-current deep gravel Deep gravel Deep sand Deep mud Deep reef Upper slope Water column	<p>Algal assemblages input nutrients to surrounding soft sediments.</p> <p>Undisturbed soft sediments support diverse, biogenically structured benthic communities that are characterised by sponges, horse mussels (<i>Atrina novaezealandiae</i>), attached red algae, tubeworms and filter-feeding brittle stars. Rhodolith beds occur in some sandy, high-current areas around the Mercury Islands.</p> <p>Small areas of subtidal offshore karepō/seagrass beds, a nationally rare habitat type, occur to 3 m depth at sheltered sites at Great Mercury Island (Ahuahu) and Slipper Island (Whakahau).</p> <p>Marine fauna characterised by a diverse subtropical element, with a seasonal influx of highly migratory pelagic species, including billfishes, tunas, pelagic sharks and rays.</p> <p>Internationally important seabird habitat.</p> <p>Semi-resident populations of terehu/bottlenose (<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>) and aihe/common dolphins.</p> <p>Kera wēra/killer whale habitat.</p>	<p>Soft-sediment communities have been extensively modified by mobile fishing gear (trawling and scallop dredging), resulting in the removal of epifauna and homogenisation of habitats.</p> <p>Anchor damage to sensitive biogenic habitats (e.g. offshore subtidal karepō/seagrass).</p> <p>Invasive marine species.</p>	

Continued on next page

Continued

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Whangapoua Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine beach Estuarine sand	Relatively natural estuarine environment with relatively abundant and diverse biota, and extensive intertidal and some subtidal karepō/seagrass beds.	Infilling by fine sediments. Invasive intertidal and subtidal species. Coastal development.	
Whitianga Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflat Estuarine sand and mud Estuarine rocky shore High-current shallow sand High-current shallow reef	Relatively healthy estuarine environment with diverse invertebrate and fish faunas. Important wading and coastal bird habitat (Site of Special Wildlife Interest). Foraging habitat for small coastal cetaceans.	Coastal development, including marina and canal development, reclamation, and stop banking. Infilling by fine sediments. Invasive species (e.g. saltwater paspalum ( <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i> )). Chronic disturbance and underwater noise pollution.	
Tairua, Wharekawa and Whangamata Harbours	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Karepō/seagrass Intertidal sand and mudflat Estuarine sands and mud	Relatively stable, healthy estuarine environments with diverse and abundant biota. Nationally important wading and coastal bird habitats. Dense karepō/seagrass beds. Intact, diverse and unusual freshwater-estuarine vegetation sequences.	Infilling by fine sediments. Coastal development, including encroachment and run-off from roadworks. Marina development (Whangamata). Invasive species.	
<b>West Coast North Island bioregion (Port Waikato to Mokau River):</b>				
Port Waikato	Saltmarsh Intertidal sand and mudflat Estuarine sand High-current shallow sand	Lower Waikato River and estuary have been identified as a wetland of international importance Important wading, shore and wetland bird habitat, and is part of the migratory corridor for internally migrating	Upstream discharges of sediments, pathogens, nutrients and other contaminants. Coastal development and flood protection works.	

Continued on next page

Continued

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		waders. Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat.	Invasive species (notably saltwater paspalum).	
Raglan Harbour	Estuarine beach Estuarine rocky shore Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand Estuarine mud Shallow, high-current sand	Abundant bivalve fauna, including subtidal hururoa/horse mussel ( <i>Atrina zelandica</i> ) beds. Important wading and shorebird habitat (Site of Special Wildlife Interest). Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat. Kera wēra/killer whale foraging habitat. Customary, recreational and commercial fisheries.	Infilling due to catchment clearance. Diffuse discharges of nutrients, pathogens and other contaminants. Coastal development. Invasive species (saltwater paspalum, spartina). Overfishing.	
Aotea Harbour	Estuarine beach Estuarine rocky shore Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand Estuarine mud Shallow, high-current sand	High natural character. Relatively healthy estuarine assemblages that are characterised by large intertidal flats supporting large karepō/seagrass beds and high bivalve densities. Nationally important wading and shore bird habitat. Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat. Customary and recreational fisheries.	Infilling due to catchment clearance. Coastal development. Invasive species (spartina, saltwater paspalum).	
Kawhia Harbour	Estuarine beach Estuarine rocky shore Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand Estuarine mud Shallow, high-current sand	High natural character. Relatively healthy estuarine assemblages that are characterised by large intertidal flats supporting extensive karepō/seagrass meadows and high bivalve densities. Nationally important wading and shore bird habitat. Tiritirimatangi Peninsula wetland, wetlands in the upper reaches of the	Infilling due to catchment clearance. Coastal development. Invasive species (spartina, saltwater paspalum).	

Continued on next page

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		<p>peninsula's eastern arm and the Awaroa arm.</p> <p>Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat.</p> <p>Customary and recreational fisheries.</p>		
Exposed outer coast	<p>Exposed beach</p> <p>Exposed rocky shore</p> <p>Moderate rocky shore</p> <p>Exposed shallow reef</p> <p>Moderate shallow reef</p> <p>Exposed shallow sand</p> <p>Moderate shallow sand</p> <p>Deep reef</p>	<p>High natural character.</p> <p>Biota of intertidal and shallow subtidal rocky reefs is poorly known—generally low diversity but distinctive assemblages adapted to a turbid, high-energy environment (often characterised by abundant red algae, small mussels and other sessile filter feeders).</p> <p>Biota of isolated offshore reefs is poorly known. Macroalgae generally restricted to subtidal fringe. Deeper substrata are encrusted with crustose coralline algae, large green shell mussels (<i>Perna canaliculus</i>), hydroids and sponges. Reef fishes are abundant but there is generally low species richness. Some subtropical reef species are present in low numbers.</p> <p>Fauna of offshore sediments is not well known. An epifaunal assemblage dominated by sponges, hydroids, barnacles and starfishes has been described from muddy sands at 37 m depth off the Mokau River mouth.</p> <p>Core Maui's dolphin (<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori maui</i>) habitat.</p> <p>Kekeno/ New Zealand fur seal (<i>Arctocephalus forsteri</i>) haulouts on Gannet Island and at Tirua Point.</p>	<p>Accelerated coastal erosion due to sea level rise.</p> <p>Set netting and trawling are threats to Maui's dolphin and other protected species.</p> <p>Overfishing.</p> <p>Sand mining.</p> <p>Marine debris.</p>	West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.

Continued on next page

Continued

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		<p>Taniwha/great white shark (<i>Carcharodon carcharias</i>) habitat.</p> <p>Productive inshore and pelagic fisheries.</p>		

## References

- Anderson, O.F.; Bagley, N.W.; Hurst, R.J.; Francis, M.P.; Clark, M.R.; McMillan, P.J. 1998: Atlas of New Zealand fish and squid distributions from research bottom trawls. NIWA Technical Report 42. 303 p.
- Bouma, S. 2007: Biological data for identified Areas of Significant Conservation Value in the Waikato coastal and marine environment. Unpublished report for Waikato Conservancy, Department of Conservation, New Zealand. 163 p.
- Department of Conservation; Ministry of Fisheries 2011: Coastal marine habitats and marine protected areas in the New Zealand Territorial Sea: a broad scale gap analysis. Vol. 1-3. Department of Conservation and the Ministry of Fisheries, Wellington, New Zealand.
- Hurst, R.J.; Bagley, N.W.; Anderson, O.F.; Francis, M.P.; Griggs, L.H.; Clark, M.R.; Paul, L.J.; Taylor, P.R. 2000: Atlas of juvenile and adult fish and squid distributions from bottom and midwater trawls and tuna longlines in New Zealand waters. NIWA Technical Report 84. 162 p.
- Kendrick, T.H.; Francis, M.P. 2002: Fish assemblages in the Hauraki Gulf, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research* 36: 699-717.
- Ramsar Wetlands Information Sheet: [www.wetlandtrust.org.nz/documents/Firth\\_factsheet.pdf](http://www.wetlandtrust.org.nz/documents/Firth_factsheet.pdf), viewed September 2012.
- Schwarz, A.; Morrison, M.; Hawes, I.; Halliday, J. 2004: Physical and biological characteristics of a threatened marine habitat: subtidal offshore seagrass beds. NIWA Client Report: HAM2004-113; NIWA Project: DOC05278. National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research Ltd, Hamilton, New Zealand. 44 p.

# Appendix 10

## Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato Conservancy

Table A10.1. Significant geological features and landforms.

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
Albatross Point, Kawhia Coast Jurassic sediments and syncline	Nationally significant—Exposed syncline showing geomorphic expression of dip slopes	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Aotea dune fields	Nationally significant—Largest example of a well-defined mobile dune field on the northwest coast	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Arapuni type ignimbrite, Waikato River; Map T15	Internationally significant—Best example of ‘ignimbrite’ as a generic term	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Bradfield's ‘Lindern Hills’ quarry Jurassic fauna; Map R16	Nationally significant—Rich lower Teraikan mollusc and brachiopod fauna, and best Teraikan fauna in New Zealand	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Cooks Beach blowhole; Map T11	Nationally significant—Spectacular sea blowholes (daylighted sea caves) on the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) tourmalinised rocks; Map T09	Nationally significant—Good exposure of large black crystals of tourmaline, and good example of hornfelses	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Daff Road Jurassic plant beds; Map R13	Nationally significant—Most accessible and robust source of Jurassic plant beds of Huriwai Formation	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Gardners Gut Cave, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Reflective of karstification, two-level development, sedimentary deposits, speleothems and fossil bone deposits	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Grand Canyon Cave, Piopio; Map R17	Nationally significant—Bat habitat; a maternity roost for pekapeka/long-tailed bats ( <i>Chalinolobus tuberculata</i> )	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Hauturu Road karst, Waitomo; Map R16	Nationally significant—Extensive area of karst in farmland; easily visible; many caves, some of which are documented separately in the Geopreservation Inventory	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes—in part
Hinuera Gap; Map T15	Nationally significant—The eroded gap through which the Waikato River flowed on its alternate Pleistocene course to the sea, via the Hauraki Plains; a distinctive landform	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Continued on next page

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
Huriwai Beach Jurassic plant beds; Map R13	Nationally significant—Extremely well-preserved and historically significant upper Jurassic flora; type locality of several species	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Kaawa Creek— Ngatutura Bay section; Map R13	Nationally significant—Completely interrelated upper Cenozoic strata and faulting; only significant Pliocene fauna in northwest North Island; rich, diverse and well-preserved molluscs; good example of faulting	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kaimango Road Jurassic fossil locality, Kawhia; Map R16	Nationally significant— Holostratotype of Mangaoran Substage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Kapanga gold discovery site; Map T10	Nationally significant—Site of the first authenticated discovery of gold in New Zealand	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Kawhia coastal karst; Map R15	Nationally significant—Spectacular examples of coastal karst; includes caves and partly submerged dolines along the coast and sinkholes and blind valleys inland	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Arataura Point Jurassic sequence; Map R15	Nationally significant— Holostratotype of Aratauran Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Heteri Point Jurassic macrofossils. Map: R15	Nationally significant— Holostratotype of Heterian Stage, with rich macrofossil fauna in shelly siltstone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Ohaua Point Jurassic fossils; Map R15	Nationally significant— Holostratotype of Ohauan Stage, with rich macrofossil fauna in concretionary siltstones	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Te Maika Point Jurassic sequence; Map R15	Nationally significant— Holostratotype of Te Maikan Stage; includes <i>in situ</i> tree stumps	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Kawhia Harbour, Totara Point and Captain Kings Shell Bed Jurassic fossils; Map R15	Nationally significant—Lower part of Heterian Stage stratotype, includes historically important Captain Kings Shell Bed containing a rich bivalve and brachiopod fauna; type locality of many species	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Ururoa Point Jurassic Dactylioceras fossil bed; Map R15	Nationally significant— Holostratotype of Ururoan Stage; includes important Dactylioceras bed with a rich and varied fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kellyville tuff ring; Map S12	Nationally significant—One of South Auckland's larger tuff rings	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Continued on next page

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
Kiritehere Coast Upper Triassic section; Map R16	Nationally significant—Continuous exposure of Upper Triassic to basal Jurassic strata; best Triassic sequence in the North Island; rich gastropod fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kiritehere Moeatoa Conglomerate lowest Triassic sequence; Map R16	Nationally significant—Base of Triassic sequence; oldest Triassic strata in the North Island	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kopouatai peat bog; Map T13	Nationally significant—Largest indigenous peat bog and wetland remaining in New Zealand	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Korapuki Sea Arch; Map T10	Nationally significant—Spectacular sea arch opening through cliff into a small cove	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Lake Disappear blind valley, Raglan; Map R15	Nationally significant—A polje that periodically floods then drains	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Link Road ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—One of only two known exposures of Ignimbrite F	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Mangapohue natural bridge; Map R16	Nationally significant—A local tourist feature	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Mangapu Cave System, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, spectacular entrance tomos, classical streamway, includes largest entrance pitch in the North Island	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Mangawharawhara Stream natural bridges and tunnels, Piopio; Map R17	Nationally significant—Spectacular karst landscape including Mangawharawhara Cavern	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes—in part
Mangawhio Road section; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of base of Ignimbrite A	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Mangawhitikau Cave System, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Largest cave stream in New Zealand, with good examples of cave geomorphology	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Maori Farm No. 1 and 3 opencast mines, Rotowaro; Map S14	Nationally significant—Notable exposure of lower and upper Waikato Coal measures		No
Maramaratotara Bay coastal features; Map T11	Nationally significant—A visor notch carved into ignimbrite; two levels of platform, one related to high tide and one to groundwater level	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Martha Hill gold lode; Map T13	Nationally significant—Most productive Coromandel gold-silver deposit	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	No

Continued on next page



Continued

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
Maungatautari Volcano; Map T15	Nationally significant—Large, prominent volcanic cone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Moeweka Quarry Jurassic fossils; Map R13	Nationally significant—Good Heterian molluscan and brachiopod fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Motutara Peninsula Jurassic and Oligocene sediments; Map R15	Nationally significant—Oligocene overlying penepplain on Upper Jurassic siltstones	Probably not Vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Mt Karioi Volcano; Map R15	Nationally significant—Large prominent volcanic cone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Mt Pirongia Volcano; Map S15	Nationally significant—Largest volcano in western Waikato; major and prominent landform	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
New Kotuku Trig Pukewharangi Hill Oligocene fossil locality; Map R14	Nationally significant—Hypostratotype of Whaingaroan Stage; richly micro-fossiliferous	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Ngapuriri Natural Arch, Port Waikato; Map R13	Nationally significant—Rare New Zealand inland example of a natural arch (ie. formed by wind erosion, unlike a natural bridge, which is formed by water erosion)	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Onewhero tuff ring; Map R13	Nationally significant—Largest tuff ring in the South Auckland field	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Opuatia cliff Jurassic fossils; Map R13	Nationally significant—Rich, diverse and well-preserved Temaikan molluscan and brachiopod fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Orua Hot Springs (Hot Water Beach); Map T11	Nationally significant—One of the very few hot springs at sea level in New Zealand	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Owharoa Falls owharoaite, Karangahake Gorge; Map T13	Internationally significant—Type locality for owharoaite, a form of lenticulite (lenticular ignimbrite)	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Paewhenua West Road ignimbrite section; Map S16	Nationally significant—Good exposure of Ignimbrite A and Ongatiti Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Paku rhyolite dome and perlite locality; Map T11	Nationally significant—Exposures of a multi-stage eruptive complex; excellent quality perlite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Piarere turn off alluvial terraces; Map T15	Internationally significant—Notable example of alluvial terraces; also good outcrops of ignimbrites, and small alluvial fans	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Port Waikato to Tuakau Bridge Road Jurassic section; Map R13	Nationally significant—Holostratotype section of Waikatoan Substage of Puarooan Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Continued on next page

Continued

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
Puaroa Creek, Kawhia Jurassic fossil locality; Map R16	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Puaroan Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Pukekawa III scoria cone; Map R13	Nationally significant—Well-preserved small scoria cone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Puketiti Flower Cave, Piopio; Map R17	Nationally significant—Speleothems, gypsum flower display	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Yes
Puketoka conglomerate; Map S12	Nationally significant—Type locality of Puketoka Formation and best exposed section through rhyolitic sedimentary rocks and conglomerate; contains clasts of flow-banded rhyolite, chalcedony and rare silicified wood	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Puti Point Jurassic fossiliferous siltstone, Kawhia; Map R15	Nationally significant—Type locality of Puti Siltstone Formation; rich fossil locality in Puaroan Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Ranginui Road ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—Exposure of proximal Auhuroa Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Ranginui Station farm road ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—Exposure of Ignimbrite C	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Ruakuri Cave, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, length, nationally important tourist cave	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Ruakuri natural bridge, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Spectacular feature, high aesthetic significance, tourism	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
State Highway 30 ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—Exposure of Manunui Ignimbrite, with underlying Ongatiti Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Tahanga Basalt prehistoric quarry; Map T10	Nationally significant—Source of widely distributed stone adze material	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Tairua opal; Map T11	Nationally significant—Rare occurrence of precious opal in New Zealand	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	No
Tapu ferrierite; Map T11	Nationally significant—New Zealand's only recorded occurrence of ferrierite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Te Kaka Ridge roscoelite; Map T11	Nationally significant—A rare occurrence of roscoelite in New Zealand	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Te Kawa olivine basalt quarry; Map S15	Nationally significant—Excellent exposures of thick olivine basalt (ankaramite) lavas	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Te Mata carnelian; Map T11	Nationally significant—Good example of carnelian	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No

Continued on next page

Continued

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
The Hole-in-the-Wall, Needle Rock; Map T10	Nationally significant—Spectacular rock arch islet	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Troopers Road Cave System, Waitomo; Map R16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, length, jointfault control, speleothems, selenite, calcite and fossil deposits; one of the most extensive North Island cave systems	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Tui Mine sulphides and speleothems; Map T13	Nationally significant—Notable New Zealand occurrence of copper-lead-zinc sulphide ore and secondary minerals	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Waiharakeke Bridge—Kinohaku Jurassic sediments; Map R16	Nationally significant—Easily accessible continuous sequence of Upper Jurassic formations	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waikato River delta; Map R13	Nationally significant—Notable North Island example of a braided river delta	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waimai Valley Oligocene sequence, Te Akau; Map R14	Nationally significant—Type locality of Waimai Limestone Member; typical north Waikato Oligocene sequence	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waipapa Dam section; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of material typical of Whakamaru Ignimbrite in the Waikato valley	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waipapa Road section A; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of base of Whakamaru Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waipapa Road section B; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of top of Whakamaru Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Wairere Falls over fault line; Map T14	Nationally significant—High waterfall held up by ignimbrite over andesite on the uplifted side of the eastern fault of the Hauraki Graben	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Wairere serpentinite, rodingite and rosenhahnite; Map R17	Nationally significant—Surface exposure of structurally complex serpentinite body; only outcrop of serpentinite in South Auckland; only known occurrence of rosenhahnite in New Zealand; well-exposed example of rodingite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Waitomo Glowworm Cave and resurgence karst; Map S16	Internationally significant—Nationally important tourist asset; best and most easily accessible area in Waitomo region showing karst resurgence features	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Waitomo Stream headwaters cave system; Map R16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, length, extent, speleothems (calcite), fossil deposits, very important recreational resources	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No

Continued on next page

Continued

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land*
Whakamaru Ignimbrite Maraetai Dam section; Map T16	Internationally significant—Type locality for Whakamaru Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Whangapoua columnar jointed basalt; Map T10	Nationally significant—Impressive example of columnar jointed basalt	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Whenuakite Dome; Map T11	Nationally significant—Well-exposed rhyolite dome, possibly the youngest in the Coromandel	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

\* The presence of features, landforms or landscapes on public conservation land administered by the Department was defined by the Department's Geographical Information System and a data match (Geopreservation Inventory only). It is a guide only, and is based on site localities (data points) and the description of landscape locations.

Table A10.2. Significant landscapes.

Landscape	Significance (international, national or regional significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threats	Protected areas
Mt Karioi (ONFL 4)	Distinctive volcanic cone close to the coast; good quality indigenous vegetation; cliffs and headlands; botanical values; tramping tracks	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Coromandel Range and Moehau Range (ONFL 5)	Massive volcanic landform; forms the distinctive backbone to the peninsula; significant to tangata whenua, e.g. pā sites; historic values of early settlement, gold mining and logging	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Mt Maungatautari (ONFL 6)	Distinctive volcanic cone; ecological island established on slopes; high natural character; significant to tangata whenua; Māori settlements formerly on the slopes; historic/early pākehā settlers	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Mt Pirongia (ONFL 7)	Distinctive volcano with several peaks, seen from much of the Waikato. Significant to tangata whenua; was a centre for the Māori Wars and a military base; recreational values; historic values	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Kaimai Range (north of Ngatamahinerua) (ONFL 8)	Volcanic origin of Mt Te Aroha; distinctive peaked, bushed landform; significant to tangata whenua—many pā and marae sites; wild and remote on the higher slopes; good quality bush	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely

Continued on next page

Landscape	Significance (international, national or regional significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threats	Protected areas
Coastal areas of the Coromandel—Cathedral Cove, Shakespeare Cliff and coastline south of Hahei (ONFL 10/1)	Dramatic white cliffs, pinnacles, arches and blowholes, and white silica beaches; several offshore islands; high natural character along coastal edge; significant to tangata whenua—footpaths along coast and pā sites; recreational values	Development and overuse threats	Yes—in part
Coastal areas of the Coromandel—northern tip of the Coromandel Peninsula and western slopes of Moehau Range out to coast (ONFL 10/2)	Combination of pasture and bush running out to cliffs and bays; distinctive coastal features; pōhutukawa ( <i>Metrosideros excelsa</i> ), indigenous forest; pā sites on headlands	Pest plants and animals	Yes—in part
Coastal areas of the Coromandel—Tuatēawa (ONFL 10/3)	Combination of dramatic coastal edge, stony beaches and rock reefs, backed by steep slopes with a large number of pōhutukawa; significant to tangata whenua; recreational values	Coastal development; Pest plants and animals	No—largely
Waikato River and associated lower Waikato River wetlands (ONFL13)	The longest river in New Zealand; modified in places by hydro-electricity dams and lakes; linked to Whangamarino Wetland, lowland lakes, and the dune spit at Port Waikato; of great significance to tangata whenua, as it passes through the home of the Māori King at Ngaruawahia; of historic importance.	Urban, agricultural and industrial discharges; dams and impediments to fish passage; algae and plant nuisances; exotic fish	Yes—in part
Hauhangaroa Range, Mt Pureora and Titiraupenga (ONFL14)	One of the largest and most significant stands of native forest within the North Island; includes tall rimu ( <i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i> ), tōtara ( <i>Podocarpus totara</i> ), mataī ( <i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i> ), miro ( <i>Prumnopitys ferruginea</i> ) and kahikatea ( <i>Dacrydium dacrydioides</i> ), along with tawa ( <i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i> ) and tree ferns, kāmahi ( <i>Weinmannia racemosa</i> ) and Hall's tōtara ( <i>Podocarpus cunninghamii</i> ); subalpine herb fields closer to summit of Mt Pureora (1165 m); includes Waihora Lagoon and 78 000-ha Pureora Forest Park	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely

Sources: (1) New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory  
(2) Proposed Waikato Regional Policy Statement amended version (2011)—based on a regional landscape assessment undertaken for Waikato Regional Council.

# Appendix 11

## Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination category/access
Aotea Heads Scientific Reserve	Aotea Harbour, north shore	Midden and pā, Māori subsistence and living	Erosion	n/a—no public access
Billygoat Incline	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri logging	Stability and vegetation management	Gateway
Bog Inn Hut	Pureora	Historic building—forestry research	Rust and decay	Backcountry network
Broken and Golden Hills Mines	Puketui Valley	Gold mining, quartz reef	Decay of structural remains	Gateway
Cathedral Cove Pā	Above Cathedral Cove arch	Māori fortification	Collapse of the arch	Icon
Christmas Creek Kauri Dam	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri logging	Timber decay; weather bombs	Gateway
Crawler Tractor	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	Local Treasure
Crosbies Farm Settlement	Crosbies Clearing Coromandel Range	Failed farm settlement	Vegetation management	n/a
Cuvier Island Lighthouse Settlement	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse station	Maritime safety	Fire; storm damage	Backcountry network
Dancing Creek Kauri Dam	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri ( <i>Agathis australis</i> ) logging	Timber decay; weather bombs	Gateway
Fletcher Bay Pā	Fletcher Bay	Māori pā	Erosion; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Fletcher Bay Wool Store	Fletcher Bay	Wool storage shed	Structural stability	Gateway
Fordson Rail Tractor	Kauaeranga Visitor Centre	Kauri logging	Rust and decay	n/a—to be deployed to a visitor site
Hysler Logging Arch	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	n/a—to be deployed to a visitor site
Judd Log Hauler	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	Local Treasure
Kakepuku Historic Reserve	Kakepuku Mountain	Four pā and other Māori sites	Erosion	Backcountry network
Kauaeranga Water Supply Intake	Nature Walk to Hoffman's Pool	Mining water supply, Thames	Vegetation management	Gateway
Kauaeranga Water Race	Kahikatea Walk	Mining water supply, Thames	Vegetation management	Gateway
Lillis Battery	Whangapoua Saddle / Kaipawa Trig Walk	Gold mining, quartz reef	Building unsafe and falling down	Local Treasure

Continued on next page

Continued

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination category/access
Long And Short Trestles	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri logging	In very poor, collapsed condition	n/a
Mccormick-Deering Tractor	Pureora	Deer recovery	Rust and decay	Local Treasure
Meremere Pā Site Historic Reserve*	Meremere, off SH1	Important Waikato War site—redoubt and pā site	Erosion	Local Treasure
Musterers Hut	Poley Bay, Coromandel Walkway	Farming, now used as day visitor shelter	Storm damage	Gateway
NZFS Workshop Building	Pureora	Native timber industry	Fire and decay	n/a—historic building
Ongarue Tramway And Spiral	Ongarue, part of The Timber Trail	Native timber industry	Erosion; storm damage	Icon/Historic Icon Site
Ongarue Tramway Miscellaneous Small Timber Assets	Ongarue, part of The Timber Trail	Native timber industry	Bridge remnants, two huts, structural decay and collapse	Icon/Historic Icon Site
Opapaka Pā	Hangatiki Scenic Reserve, Waitomo	Ridge pā	Erosion	Gateway
Opera Point Historic Reserve	North Head Whangapoua Harbour	Headland pā	Erosion; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Opito Point Historic Reserve	East end of Opito Bay	Headland pā	Erosion; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Papa Aroha Historic Reserve	Papa Aroha	Māori pā	Vegetation management and access	Local Treasure
Puraho Historic Reserve	Aotea Harbour, south shore	Headland pā	Erosion	Local Treasure
Pureora—Timber Workers' House and Store	Pureora	Native timber industry	Fire; being transferred to iwi	Icon/Historic Icon Site
Ruakuri Historic Kiosk	Waitomo, Ruakuri Reserve	Cave tourism	Fire and decay	Gateway
Robinson Hauler	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	n/a—to be deployed to a visitor site
Royal Standard Tramway	Wharekirauponga Valley	Gold mining, quartz reef, tunnels	Track upgrade compromising integrity	Local Treasure
Soldiers Grave	Pirongia Mountain	European soldiers' graves	Semi-remote, difficult public access	n/a—no public access
Taniwha Pā Historic Reserve	Within private land at Taniwha	Fortified food storage pā	Semi-remote, difficult public access	n/a—no public access
Te Pare Point Historic Reserve	South end of Hahei Beach	Headland pā (Heraherataura Pā is the main visitor site in this reserve)	Erosion	Local Treasure
Te Teo Teo Pā <sup>†</sup>	Whangamarino Walkway	Pā involved in Waikato War	Erosion	Local Treasure

Continued on next page

Continued

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination category/access
Wentworth Battery	Wentworth Valley	Gold mining, quartz reef	Structural stability; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Wharekatua Pā	Port Jackson	Māori pā	Erosion	Local Treasure
Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve	Ferry landing	Headland pā	Weed management	Local Treasure
Whiritoa Rock Art Site	Beyond northern end of Whiritoa Beach	Māori rock art	In tidal zone; damage to protective cage	Local Treasure
World War II Radar Station Structures	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) highest point	World War II defence	Fire; storm damage	Backcountry network

\* Registered wāhi tapu 'Meremere' (no. 9609).

† Registered wāhi tapu 'Te Toe Teo' (no. 9607).



# Appendix 12

## Key recreation destinations in Waikato Conservancy

Note: Recreation destinations located in backcountry or remote settings are not included in this table but are addressed in general in Parts One and Two of this strategy.

Icon destinations	
Cathedral Cove	Cathedral Cove Walk Hahei Beach Walk Mahurangi Island Track
The Timber Trail*	Piropiro Campsite The Timber Trail
Gateway destinations	
Kauaeranga Valley Gateway	Booms Flat Campsite Booms Historical Walk Catleys Campsite Hotoritori Campsite Kahikatea Walk Kauaeranga Nature Walk Kauaeranga Road Murray's Walk Shag Stream Campsite Totara Flat Campsite Trestle view Campsite Wainora Campsite Wainora Kauri Track Whangaiterenga Campsite
Kauaeranga Kauri Trail Gateway	Billygoat Basin Track - Hydro Camp Track - Kauaeranga Valley Road end Hydro Camp - Pinnacles Hut Track - Kauaeranga Kauri Trail Pinnacles Hut and Campsite Pinnacles Hut to Pinnacles Track Webb Creek - Hydro Camp Track - Kauaeranga Kauri Trail
Broken Hills Gateway	Broken Hills Campsite Gem of the Boom / Broken Hills Battery Tracks Golden Hills Mine - Water Race Track - Third Branch Track
Wentworth Valley Gateway	Wentworth Campsite Wentworth Falls Track
Fletcher Bay Campsite Gateway	Fletcher Bay Campsite
Stony Bay Campsite Gateway	Coromandel Walkway Stony Bay Campsite
Waikawau Bay Gateway	Waikawau Bay Campsite Waikawau Bay Reserve
Ruakuri Walk	Opapaka Pā and historic sites Ruakuri Access Road Ruakuri Amenity Area Ruakuri Walk
Kakaho Campsite	Kakaho Campsite Rimu Walk
Kaniwhaniwha Amenity Area	Bell Track (to tallest tree) Kaniwhaniwha amenity area Nikau Walk

Continued on next page

Continued

<b>Local treasures</b>
Aratoro Carpark / picnic area
Barryville Road
Bridal Veil Falls—Short Walk
Buried Forest Walk—Pureora
Catley's Track
Centre of North Island Track
Corcoran Road Carpark and Short Walk
Crawler Tractor Walk
Edwards Lookout Track
Forest Tower Walk and Carpark
Four Brothers Walk
Grey Road Carpark
Hakarimata Rail Trail
Hakarimata Summit Track
Horoure Pā Historic Site—Aotea
Hotoritori (Pony) Trail
Jasper Creek Walk
Karakariki Track to waterfall
Kauaeranga Visitor Centre
Kauri Block Track
Kauri Loop Walk—Hakarimata
Lake Cameron
Link Road Carpark
Link Track—Pirongia
Mahaukura Track (Grey Road to Wharauroa Peak)
Mangakara Nature Walk
Manganui Roads
Mangaotaki Track / picnic area
Mangapohue picnic area
Mangapohue Walk
Manuka Track—Te Kauri Park
Maratoto Road
Maratoto Roadend to Golden Cross Track
Marokopa Falls Walk and picnic area
Matamataharakeke Track
Maungakawa Short Walk
Meremere Redoubt Historic Site
Mine Road
Mt Pureora Track (from Link Road)
Ngarunui Track (Bryant)
Omaru Falls Track
Oparure Hall
Opera Point Historic Site
Opoutere Beach Track
Otama Beach Recreation Reserve
Outlook 76 Walkway
Papa Aroha Track
Parker Road car park—Hakarimata

Continued on next page

Continued

<b>Local treasures</b>
Pauanui Beach Loop Walk
Pauanui Trig Track
Pikiariki Road
Pikiariki Tractor Hauler Track
Piripiri Walk / picnic area
Port Jackson Campsite
Port Jackson Road
Pureora Cabins and Carpark
Pureora Village Road
Red Bridge Road Track
Rockys Walk Track to Tinkers Gully
Ruapane Track
Scott Roads
Select Loop Road / Mountain Bike Track
Square Kauri Walk
Stony Bay Fishing Track
Taumatawhine Track
Te Pare Pā Walk
Te Rauamoia Roads
Te Raumaiku Track
Te Toto Gorge
Tirohanga Track (Corcoran Road to Ruapane Track)
Tokatea Track
Totara Walk—Pureora
Twin Kauri Track
Waiau Falls Track
Waiau Kauri Grove Track
Waihaha Track
Waimama Bay Track
Waiomu Kauri Grove Track
Waitaia Track
Waitanguru Walk / picnic area
Waitomo Walkway
Water Race Track (Bryant Memorial Scenic Reserve)
Waterworks/Waingaro Link Track
Wentworth Mines Walk
Whangamarino Historic Walk and Pā
Wharekirauponga Track
Whenuakite Kauri Loop Track
Whewells Bush Scientific Reserve

\* Also identified as a Historic Icon Site.

# Appendix 13

## Prescriptions for the management of visitor management zones

Refer to Volume II for maps of the visitor management zones in Waikato Conservancy.

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry— accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
<b>General description</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Areas inside or on the periphery of urban areas</li> <li>• Typically includes a historic or cultural site</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remnant native forest, wetlands, marine reserves and historic or cultural sites in areas dominated by farmland and plantation forest</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Where the majority of visitation occurs; typically small areas, scattered within or on the periphery of large relatively natural areas</li> <li>• Includes the vicinity of main 'scenic' roads passing through public conservation lands</li> <li>• Often focused on a particular attraction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Large-scale natural settings generally accessed first through front country</li> <li>• Includes popular walks and tramps set within the body of large-scale natural settings and/or that access other settings</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Catchments beyond the backcountry zone, forming the wild lands in the interior of large, protected areas, with basic low-use tracks, marked routes and huts</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gazetted wilderness</li> </ul>
<b>Accessibility</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enabled for people of most ages and abilities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Typically via sealed and unsealed roads, and in some cases by boat</li> <li>• Enabled for people of most ages or abilities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Readily accessible areas, usually via sealed roads, or scheduled ferry or air services</li> <li>• Mostly by car, but also tour buses and guided parties to some sites</li> <li>• Enabled for people of most ages and abilities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• People will have travelled some distance to reach these settings</li> <li>• 'Backcountry accessible' focuses on gravel roads, four-wheel drive tracks, navigable waters and aircraft landing sites</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Typically 5 or more hours travel from front country</li> <li>• Access supported by aircraft in some areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Requires passing through backcountry and remote to reach the boundary</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry— accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
<b>Predominant visitor groups</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Short-stop travellers and day visitors</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Predominantly short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters</li> <li>Other visitors in transition to backcountry and remote settings</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Motorised ground access generally restricted to designated tracks</li> <li>'Backcountry walk-in' is focused beyond the influence of motorised access</li> <li>Predominantly 'backcountry comfort seekers' and 'backcountry adventurers'</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>'Backcountry adventurers' and 'remoteness seekers'</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>'Remoteness seekers'</li> </ul>
<b>Facility setting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High-standard footpaths, cycleways and modified landscapes</li> <li>High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Short walks, campsites and picnic areas, for a range of ages and abilities</li> <li>High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Good-quality facilities, services and easy access</li> <li>Sometimes the origin for tramping tracks and routes, with signs and information to make this transition clear</li> <li>High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A range of facility standards, including any vehicle tracks, and popular walks and tramping tracks</li> <li>Evidence of control limited to essential directional signs and barriers on Great Walks, and places where there are significant hazards</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Basic huts, bridges, low-use tracks and marked routes</li> <li>Evidence of control is limited to essential signs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No facilities</li> </ul>
<b>Desired visitor experience and interactions</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Varying, from activities with large groups, time with small groups/families, some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude</li> </ul>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generally some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reasonable expectation of isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complete isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people</li> </ul>

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
<b>Preferred maximum party size</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What is socially appropriate</li> <li>Conforming concessions schedule—15</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>50</li> <li>Conforming concessions schedule—15</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>15</li> <li>50 for periodic tour bus parties</li> <li>Conforming concessions schedule—15</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>15</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6</li> </ul>
<b>Typical visitor interaction levels</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What is socially appropriate</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>20 or less people seen per hour</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>30 or less people seen per visit duration</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>15 or less people seen per day for 'backcountry adventurer' tracks</li> <li>40 or less people seen per day for 'backcountry comfort seeker' tracks</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10 or less people seen per day</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6 or less people seen per visit duration</li> </ul>
<b>Concessions operations</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Concessionaire activity may be permitted in all these visitor management zones, subject to conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including compliance with criteria within this table; the outcomes and policies for Part Two: Places and policies in Part Three apply</li> <li>Concessionaire client activities should not be advantaged or disadvantaged compared with those for non-concessionaire visitors, unless there is a specified reason for different management; the outcomes and policies for Part Two: Places and policies in Part Three apply</li> </ul>					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Concessions should not be granted for this setting</li> </ul>
<b>Concessions effects management</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Avoid, remedy or mitigate effects by setting conditions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Avoid or mitigate effects</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Concessions activity to be indistinguishable from other approved activities</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No concessions</li> </ul>
<b>Aircraft management</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aircraft access for visitor use purpose should not be approved other than in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.12 (Aircraft) in Part Three and the outcomes and policies and Part Two: Places</li> </ul>					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aircraft access will not be granted</li> </ul>

# Appendix 14

## Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

### The Vision

*Tōku awa koiora me ōna pikonga he kura tangihia o te mātāmuri.  
The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last.*

Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.

### The Objectives and Strategies

The Objectives and Strategies of the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River are listed below. Relevant sections and provisions of this CMS are also listed to demonstrate how this CMS implements the Department’s responsibilities under legislation to implement the Vision and Strategy.

Table A14.1. Sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS that implement the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.

CMS section	Relevant CMS provision(s) and/or explanation
<b>Introduction</b>	
Purpose of conservation management strategies—General policies	States that the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River has the status of a general policy
Relationship with other ... agencies’ planning processes	States the planning context within which CMSs are prepared, and obligations under legislation towards other plans and strategies and the CMS
Legislative tools—conservation management plans	Lists the following integrated river management plans: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Waikato River</li> <li>• The Upper Waikato River</li> <li>• The Waipa River</li> </ul>
<b>Part One—Conservancy-wide</b>	
Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060	Includes specific reference to restoration of the health and well-being of the Waikato River
Section 1.3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato Conservancy—Water—the force of the region	Includes specific reference to the Waikato and Waipa Rivers
Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities	Includes specific reference to Waikato River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto tribal links, territories and Treaty settlements; all objectives apply
Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024	Natural heritage—Objectives 1.5.1.1 to 1.5.1.4, 1.5.1.6 to 1.5.1.8, 1.5.1.10 and 1.5.1.11 apply History—Objectives 1.5.2.1, 1.5.2.3 to 1.5.2.5, 1.5.2.7 and 1.5.2.8 apply Recreation—Objectives 1.5.3.3 to 1.5.3.5 and 1.5.3.8 apply

Continued on next page

CMS section	Relevant CMS provision(s) and/or explanation
	Engagement—Objectives 1.5.4.1 to 1.5.4.7 apply Business—Objectives 1.5.5.1 and 1.5.5.2 apply
Section 1.6: The Waikato River – Te Awa o Waikato	Details those iwi who have a relationship and claim to the Waikato and Waipa Rivers, Treaty settlement legislation, and the key mechanisms arising from that legislation, including the Vision and Strategy, integrated river management plans and conservation accords; all objectives apply
<b>Part Two—Places</b>	
Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place	Description and Outcome—recognises Waikato-Tainui’s relationship with the Lower Waikato Wetlands (part of the Waikato-Tainui Co-governance Area), and the wetlands’ association with the Waikato River and contribution to achieving the Vision and Strategy; Policies 2.5.1, 2.5.3, 2.5.5 to 2.5.7 and 2.5.10 apply
Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain	Description and Outcome—recognises the relationship that Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto have with the part of the Waikato and Waipa River catchments on Pirongia Mountain, and its contribution to achieving both the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the care and protection of the Waipa River; Policy 2.6.13 applies
Section 2.8: Pureora Place	Description and Outcome—recognises the relationship Ngāti Maniapoto has with the Upper Waipa River catchment in northern parts of Pureora Forest Park, and its contribution to achieving both the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the care and protection of the Waipa River; Policies 2.8.1, 2.8.2, 2.8.4 and 2.8.16 apply
<b>Part Three—Specific policy requirements for Waikato Conservancy</b>	
Policies	Throughout the policies in this section, there is frequent requirement for assessment of impacts of activities on cultural and historic values, e.g. motor vehicle use, mountain bike use, horse use, watercraft use, aircraft use
Private accommodation	Description—Reference to requirement to provide for any structures along the Waikato River that have statutory acknowledgement under Treaty settlement legislation; Policies 3.10.8 and 3.10.9 apply
Collection of material	Description—Recognises customary activities of significance to tangata whenua, and that Treaty settlements can provide more specific recognition and provision for customary use of material; all policies apply
Commercial eeling	All policies apply
<b>Appendices</b>	
Appendix 11: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy	Identifies historic places managed by the Department in Waikato Conservancy and includes several sites close to and/or associated with the Waikato River, e.g. Te Toe Toe Pā



Table A14.2. The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River: Objectives.

Objectives for the Waikato River	Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
<p>a) <i>The restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Purpose of conservation management strategies—General policies</li> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—conservation management plans</li> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato Conservancy—Water—the force of the region</li> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies</li> <li>• Part Three: Private accommodation</li> <li>• Part Three: Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> <li>• Appendix 11: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy</li> </ul>
<p>b) <i>The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato-Tainui with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationship</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Natural heritage, History and Business</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> </ul>
<p>c) <i>The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato River Iwi according to their tikanga and kawa with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationship</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Natural heritage, History and Business</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>
<p>d) <i>The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato Region’s communities with the Waikato River, including the economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationships</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—all sections apply</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Appendix 11: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy</li> </ul>
<p>e) <i>The integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to management of the natural, physical, cultural and historic resources of the Waikato River</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—all sections apply</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Objectives for the Waikato River	Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies (in general)</li> <li>• Part Three: Private accommodation</li> <li>• Part Three: Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> </ul>
f) <i>The adoption of a precautionary approach towards decisions that may result in significant adverse effects on the Waikato River, and in particular those effects that threaten serious or irreversible damage to the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies (in general)</li> <li>• Part Three: Private accommodation</li> <li>• Part Three: Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> </ul>
g) <i>The recognition and avoidance of adverse cumulative effects, and potential cumulative effects, of activities undertaken both on the Waikato River and within its catchments on the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies (in general)</li> <li>• Part Three: Private accommodation</li> <li>• Part Three Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> </ul>
h) <i>The recognition that the Waikato River is degraded and should not be required to absorb further degradation as a result of human activities</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato Conservancy—Water—the force of the region</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>
i) <i>The protection and enhancement of significant sites, fisheries, flora and fauna</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Natural heritage and History</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies (in general)</li> <li>• Part Three: Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> <li>• Appendix 11: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy</li> </ul>
j) <i>The recognition that the strategic importance of the Waikato River to New Zealand's social, cultural, environmental and economic wellbeing is subject to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato Conservancy—Water—the force of the region</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—all sections apply</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Objectives for the Waikato River		Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
k)	<i>The restoration of water quality within the Waikato River so that it is safe for people to swim in and take food from over its entire length</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place.</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies (in general)</li> <li>• Part Three: Private accommodation</li> <li>• Part Three: Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> </ul>
l)	<i>The promotion of improved access to the Waikato River to better enable sporting, recreational, and cultural opportunities</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—History and Recreation.</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Part Three: Policies (in general)</li> <li>• Part Three: Private accommodation</li> <li>• Part Three: Collection of material</li> <li>• Part Three: Commercial eeling</li> </ul>
m)	<i>The application to the above of both mātauranga Māori and the latest available scientific methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>

Table A14.3. The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River: Strategies.

Strategies for the Waikato River		Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
a)	<i>Ensure that the highest level of recognition is given to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Purpose of conservation management strategies—General policies</li> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> </ul>
b)	<i>Establish what the current health status of the Waikato River is by utilising mātauranga Māori and the latest available scientific methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans)</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>
c)	<i>Develop targets for improving the health and well-being of the Waikato River by utilising mātauranga Māori and the latest available scientific methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans)</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>
d)	<i>Develop and implement a programme of action to achieve the targets for improving the health and well-being of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans)</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Strategies for the Waikato River		Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
e)	<i>Develop and share local, national and international expertise, including indigenous expertise, on rivers and activities within their catchments that may be applied to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> </ul>
f)	<i>Recognise and protect wāhi tapu and sites of significance to Waikato-Tainui and other Waikato River iwi (where they do decide) to promote their cultural, spiritual, and historic relationship with the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Natural heritage and History</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Appendix 11: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy</li> </ul>
g)	<i>Recognise and protect appropriate sites associated with the Waikato River that are of significance to the Waikato regional community</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Natural heritage and History</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> <li>• Appendix 11: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato Conservancy</li> </ul>
h)	<i>Actively promote and foster public knowledge and understanding of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River among all sectors of the Waikato regional community</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Engagement</li> </ul>
i)	<i>Encourage and foster a “whole of river” approach to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River, including the development, recognition, and promotion of best practice methods for restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans)</li> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Natural heritage and Engagement</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> <li>• Section 2.5: Freshwater Wetlands Place</li> <li>• Section 2.6: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain</li> <li>• Section 2.8: Pureora Place</li> </ul>
j)	<i>Establish new, and enhance existing, relationships between Waikato-Tainui, other Waikato River iwi (where they so decide), and stakeholders with an interest in advancing, restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans)</li> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Engagement</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> </ul>

Continued on next page

Strategies for the Waikato River		Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
k)	<i>Ensure that cumulative adverse effects on the Waikato River of activities are appropriately managed in statutory planning documents at the time of their review</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans)</li> <li>• Introduction: Relationship with other ... agencies' planning processes</li> <li>• Section 1.2: Vision for Waikato—2060</li> <li>• Section 1.4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities</li> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Engagement</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> </ul>
l)	<i>Ensure appropriate public access to the Waikato River while protecting and enhancing the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Section 1.5: Waikato Conservancy by 2024—Recreation</li> <li>• Section 1.6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato</li> </ul>

# Appendix 15

## Prescriptions for the management of aircraft zones

### Red Zone

#### *Description*

Areas where there are no recreational landings. An application for a landing permit would most likely be declined for this zone.

#### **Landings can still take place for the following purposes:**

- Management
- Search and rescue
- Maintenance of equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic, communication systems)
- To support a research and collection permit (with area manager agreement).

### Orange Zone

#### *Description*

Areas where there are low levels of aircraft activity consistent with natural quiet parameters of visitor management zone settings/outcomes/values. An application for a landing permit that meets the limits and conditions specified in Part Two and Part Three of this CMS is likely be approved in this zone, but may be subject to other national and local conditions.

### Yellow Zone

#### *Description*

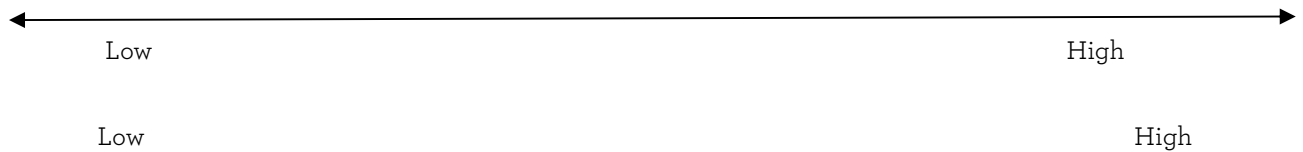
Areas where there are low levels of aircraft activity consistent with natural quiet parameters of visitor management zone settings/outcomes/values. An application for a landing permit that meets the national conditions (see below) is likely be approved in this zone, but may be subject to other national and local conditions.

### Green Zone

#### *Description*

Areas where values are not affected by landings, where there are natural limits on sites where landings can actually occur, or where it is unlikely that there would be any demand. An application for a landing permit would most likely be approved in this zone subject to national conditions and provided the activity is consistent with the outcomes for the Place. (See table over.)

**Interpretation of outcome statement wording around level of aircraft use in the Green Zone**



<b>Average percentage of time that aircraft are likely to be encountered</b>	1% or less	5%	25%	50% or more
<b>Likely visitor management zone</b>	Remote and/or backcountry zones		Backcountry and/or front country zones	
<b>Key word to use in the outcome at Place to describe and achieve above percentage</b>	Rare	Occasional	Regular	Frequent

# Appendix 16

## Private accommodation schedule

Location of building(s)	Concession expiry date	Circumstances
Flax Block Wildlife Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 March 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve	30 June 2041	Caretaker's house
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Bush Tramway Club Stewardship Land	31 December 2031	Private residence
Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve	31 March 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Pirongia Forest Park	30 November 2030	Caretaker's house
Waikato River—marginal strips	No concession	Various illegal structures along lower Waikato River—locations unknown
Waiwawa catchment—Coromandel Forest Park	No concession	Illegal hut
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	No concession	Two illegal private huts (Duck Huts)
Waemaro Wetland Management Reserve	No concession	One illegal private hut (Duck Hut)
Horsham Downs Lakes	No concession	One illegal private hut (Duck Hut)
Waipa Peat Lakes	No concession	Five illegal private huts (Duck Huts)
Torehape Wildlife Management Reserve	No concession	One illegal private hut (Duck Hut)
Lake Whangape Wildlife Management Reserve	No concession	Three illegal private huts (Duck Huts)
Arapuni Scenic Reserve	No concession	Three illegal private huts





